

A Study Guide to *An Introduction to Greek*
By Henry Lamar Crosby & John Nevin Schaeffer

Stephen H. Hulme
Raleigh, NC
October 9, 2006

List of Abbreviations	9
Lesson I Declension of O-Stems	10
Section 7 Exercises	10
Lesson II Declension of O- Stems	11
Section 12 Exercises	11
Lesson III Present Indicative And Infinitive Active of Ω- Verbs	12
Section 18 Exercises	12
Section 19.....	12
Lesson IV Declension of O- Stem Neuters	13
Section 26 Exercises	13
Lesson V Review	14
Section 28 Exercises	14
Lesson VI Declension of A- Stems	15
Study Notes: Genitive Plural Formation.....	15
Section 34 Exercises	16
Lesson VII Declension of A- Stems – Continued.....	17
Section 39 Exercises	17
Lesson VIII Imperfect Indicative Active of Ω- Verbs	18
Study Notes: Table of Temporal Augments	18
Section 47 Exercises	18
Section 48 Greek as a World Language.....	19
Lesson IX Future Indicative And Infinitive Active Of Ω- Verbs.....	20
Section 52 Exercises	20
Lesson X First And Second Aorist Indicative And Infinitive Active of Ω- Verbs	22
Section 59 Exercises	22
Lesson XI Review	23
Section 60 Assignments.....	23
Section 61 Exercises	26
Lesson XII Reading	27
Section 65 Marathon.....	27
Lesson XIII Pronouns	28
Section 72 Exercises	28
Section 73 Some Axioms of Euclid.....	28
Lesson XIV Demonstrative Pronouns.....	29
Study Notes: Declension Of ἀδιάβητος And Other Two-termination Adjectives....	29
Section 79 Exercises	29
Section 80 λόγος of St. John's Gospel	30
Lesson XV Feminine Nouns of the A-Declension. Personal Pronouns.....	31
Section 85 Exercises	31
Section 86 Translate This Fragment From Menander	31
Lesson XVI Masculine Nouns of the A-Declension. Reflexive Pronouns	32
Section 91 Exercises	32
Section 92 More Axioms of Euclid	32

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XVII	Present and Imperfect Indicative and Present Infinitive of εἶμι.	
Enclitics.	33	
Section 99	Exercises	33
Section 100	In Hostile Territory	33
Lesson XVIII	Consonant Declension (K-Stems).....	34
Section 105	Exercises	34
Lesson XIX	Consonant Declension (Δ- or T-Stems).....	36
Section 110	Exercises	36
Lesson XX	Review	37
Section 111	Assignments	37
Section 112	Exercises	39
Lesson XXI	Participles.....	40
Section 119	Exercises	40
Section 120	A Traitor Caught.....	40
Lesson XXII	πᾶς Reading.....	41
Section 123	Exercises	41
Section 126	The Review Of An Army.....	41
Lesson XXIII	Contract Verbs in -έω.....	42
Section 130	Exercises	42
Section 131	Human Frailty	42
Lesson XXIV	Present And Imperfect Indicative, Present Infinitive, And Participle Of παύω In Middle and Passive Voice.....	43
Section 141	Exercises	43
Section 142	A Heavy Snowfall.....	44
Lesson XXV	Middle And Passive Of Verbs in -έω.....	45
Section 146	Exercises	45
Section 147	A Wise Camel	45
Lesson XXVI	Future and Aorist Middle.....	46
Section 156	Exercises	46
Section 157	Dramatis Personae	46
Lesson XXVII	Review	47
Section 158	Assignments	47
Section 159	Exercises	51
Lesson XXVIII	Word Study. Reading.....	52
Section 162	Ὁ φροντὶς Ἰπποκλείδη.....	52
Lesson XXIX	Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns	53
Section 170	Exercise.....	53
Section 171	Time The Healer	53
Section 172	The Keynote of Greek Genius	53
Lesson XXX	Subjunctive Active.....	54
Section 178	Exercises	54
Section 179	The Better Part of Valor.....	54
Lesson XXXI	Subjunctive Middle and Passive. Aorist Subjunctive Middle	55
Study Notes:	Uses of Subjunctive Tenses in Conditional Statements.....	55

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 185	Exercises	55
Section 186	Philosopher And Friend	56
Lesson XXXII	Optative Active	57
Section 194	Exercises	57
Section 195	Loose Logic	58
Section 196	Q.E.D.	58
Lesson XXXIII	Present Optative Middle And Passive. Future And Aorist Optative Middle	59
Study Notes:	Use of Optative Tenses in Conditional Statements.....	59
Study Notes:	Summary of Primary and Secondary Tenses	59
Study Notes:	Summary of Subjunctive And Optative Endings	60
Study Notes:	Summary of Optative Forms For Common Verbs	61
Section 201	Exercises	64
Section 202	Peace and War.....	64
Lesson XXXIV	Conditional Relative Clauses.....	65
Section 208	Exercises	65
Section 209	“They That Go Down To The Sea In Ships”: Fragments from Sophocles and Menander To Illustrate Conditional Relative Clauses.....	66
Lesson XXXV	Indirect Discourse	67
Study Notes:	Summary Of Indirect Discourse.....	67
Section 219	Exercises	68
Section 220	What Fools These Mortals Be!	69
Lesson XXXVI	Review	70
Section 221	Assignments.....	70
Lesson XXXVII	Reading	75
Section 224	The Delphic Oracle	75
Lesson XXXVIII	Consonant Declension – Stems Ending in a Liquid (λ, μ, ν, ρ)	76
Study Notes:	Review of Consonant Declension	76
Study Notes:	Summary of Typical Declensions for Consonant Declension Nouns.	77
Study Notes:	Two-ending Adjectives in $-ων/-ον$	78
Section 230	Exercises	79
Section 231	On Mars’ Hill Acts XVII. 22-25.....	79
Lesson XXXIX	Consonant Declension – Continued.....	80
Study Notes:	Declension of Neuters with Stems in $-\epsilon\sigma$	80
Section 238	Exercises	81
Section 239	A Practical Politician	81
Lesson XL	Adjectives Of Consonant And A-Declensions Combined. Irregular Adjectives	82
Study Notes:	Declensions of Adjectives in this Chapter	82
Section 248	Exercises	83
Section 250	Eros Wins.....	84
Lesson XLI	Regular Comparison of Adjectives	85
Study Notes:	Summary of Comparison of Adjectives	85
Section 256	Exercises	87

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 257	Wisest of All	88
Section 258	Aristotle on Friendship	88
Lesson XLII	Irregular Comparison	89
Study Notes:	Comparison of Adjectives	89
Study Notes:	Declension of ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον	89
Section 262	Exercises	90
Section 263	Esse Quam Videri	90
Section 264	Excerpt from Euripides' <i>Suppliants</i>	91
Section 265	ΓΝΟΜΑΙ ΜΕΝΑΝΔΡΟΥ	91
Section 266	Right is Might	91
Lesson XLIII	Formation and Comparison Of Adverbs	92
Study Notes:	Table of Comparison for Adjectives/Adverbs	92
Section 272	Exercises	92
Section 273	A Superlative Character	93
Lesson XLIV	Consonant Declension	94
Section 278	Exercises	94
Section 279	A Headstrong Youth	95
Lesson XLV	Syncopated Nouns Of The Consonant Declension	96
Study Notes:	Declension of κέρασ, κέρᾱτος/κέρως, τό	96
Section 284	Exercises	96
Section 285	A Fearless Statesman	97
Lesson XLVI	Review	98
Section 287	Assignments	98
Section 288	Exercises	99
Lesson XLVII	Reading	100
Section 290	Thermopylae	100
Lesson XLVIII	Imperative Active	101
Section 296	Exercises	101
Section 297	Salamis	102
Section 298	Poet and Patriot	102
Section 299	Drink to Me Only	102
Lesson XLIX	Imperative Middle And Passive	103
Study Notes:	Summary of Imperative Forms For Lessons XLVIII and XLIX	103
Section 304	Exercises	107
Section 305	Pro Patria (Selections from Tyrtaeus)	108
Lesson L	Future of Liquid Verbs	109
Section 310	Exercises	109
Section 311	The Almighty Dollar	110
Section 312	Persian Treachery	110
Lesson LI	Aorist of Liquids	111
Section 316	Exercises	111
Section 317	Poor Seriphos!	111
Section 318	Sang Froid	112
Lesson LII	Perfect Active	113

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 326	Exercises	113
Section 327	A Cynical Thrust.....	114
Lesson LIII	Perfect Middle And Passive	115
Study Notes:	Inflection of <i>παύω</i> , <i>λείπω</i> , <i>ἀτιμάζω</i> and <i>φαίνω</i> in the Perfect and Pluperfect Middle/Passive	115
Section 333	Exercises	117
Section 334	Christ And The Tempter	118
Section 335	A Narrow Escape	119
Lesson LIV	Future And Aorist Passive	120
Study Notes	120
Section 342	Exercises	120
Section 343	A Narrow Escape – <i>Continued</i>	121
Lesson LV	Principal Parts	122
Study Notes:	Principal Parts Table	122
Section 348	Exercise.....	122
Section 351	The Jealous Lover	123
Lesson LVI	Numerals	126
Section 355	Exercises	126
Section 356	Greek Views On Death	127
Lesson LVII	Review	128
Section 357	Assignments	128
Section 358	Exercises	130
Lesson LVIII	Reading	131
Section 360	The Original Research Man	131
Section 361	Business and Religion.....	131
Lesson LIX	Present of <i>ἵστημι</i>	132
Study Notes	132
Section 365	Inflection of <i>δύναμαι</i> in the Present System.....	133
Section 367	Exercise.....	134
Section 368	Fond Parents.....	134
Section 369	A Fish In The Hand.....	134
Lesson LX	Second Aorist Active Of <i>ἵστημι</i>	135
Section 371	Inflection of <i>στάς</i> and <i>ἔβην</i>	135
Section 374	Exercises	137
Section 375	“O Wad Some Power”	137
Lesson LXI	Indirect Discourse	138
Study Notes:	Inflection of <i>βοῦς</i> , <i>βασιλεύς</i> , <i>ναῦς</i>	138
Section 380	Exercises	139
Section 382	Attic Salt	140
Lesson LXII	Present of <i>τίθημι</i> And <i>ἵημι</i>	141
Study Notes:	Inflection of <i>τιθείς</i> , <i>τιθεῖσα</i> , <i>τιθέν</i>	141
Section 388	Exercises	141
Section 389	Not All Dead Yet	142
Lesson LXIII	Aorist Active And Middle Of <i>τίθημι</i> And <i>ἵημι</i>	143

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 395	Exercises	143
Section 396	Ab Hoste Doceri	143
Section 397	A Patriot	144
Section 398	Undying Fame	144
Section 399	Life's Tragedy	144
Section 400	Play The Game	144
Section 401	The Sober Second Thought	144
Section 402	Word Formation	145
Lesson LXIV	Present of <i>δίδωμι</i>	146
Section 406	Exercises	146
Section 407	Out Of The Frying Pan	147
Section 408	The Persian Courier Post	147
Lesson LXV	Aorist Active And Middle Of <i>δίδωμι</i>	148
Section 413	Exercises	148
Section 414	A Hard Customer	149
Lesson LXVI	Review	150
Lesson LXVI	Review	150
Section 416	Assignments	150
Section 417	Exercises	151
Lesson LXVII	<i>τιμάω</i> . Review of the Genitive	152
Section 422	Exercises	152
Section 423	The Earliest Exploration Party On Record	153
Lesson LXVIII	<i>οἶδα</i> . Review Of The Dative	154
Section 429	Exercises	154
Section 430	The Prayer Of Socrates	154
Section 431	The Retort Courteous!	155
Section 432	In Praise Of Eros	155
Section 433	Lovely Woman	155
Lesson LXIX	<i>εἶμι</i> Review of the Accusative	156
Section 439	Exercises	156
Section 440	A Good Loser	156
Lesson LXX	Similarities In Form -- <i>εἶμι, εἶμι, ἔημι</i>	158
Study Notes:	Parallel Inflections of <i>εἶμι, εἶμι, ἔημι</i>	158
Section 444	Exercises	161
Section 445	Poetry Pays	164
Section 446	<i>οἶνος καὶ ἀλήθεια</i>	164
Lesson LXXI	Inflection of <i>δείκνυμι</i>	165
Section 449	Exercises	165
Section 450	No Match For Socrates	166
Section 452	Carry On!	166
Lesson LXXII	Aorist of <i>γινώσκω</i>	167
Section 455	Sound Advice	167
Section 456	The Six-Hour Day	167
Section 457	As A Flower Of The Field	167

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 459	Exercise.....	168
Lesson LXXIII	Inflection Of δηλόω.....	169
Study Notes:	Summary of Verb/Vowel Contraction Rules	169
Section 464	Exercises	170
Section 465	"The Sea! The Sea!"	171
Section 466	Shadow Or Substance	171
Lesson LXXIV	Summary of Participial Forms	172
Section 471	A Grumbler Shamed	172
Section 472	Exercise.....	172
Lesson LXXV	Summary of Infinitive Forms And Uses.....	173
Section 476	Exercises	173
Section 477	"Heads, I Win; Tails, You Lose"	174
Section 478	The Marriage Market	175
Lesson LXXVI	Summary Of Subjunctive Forms And Uses	176
Study Notes:	Tenses and Moods in Object Clauses After Verbs of Fearing	176
Section 482	Exercises	177
Section 483	A Friend In Need	177
Section 484	The Beam That Is In Thine Own Eye	177
Section 485	The Oath Of The Ephebi.....	178
Section 486	The Forgiving Spirit.....	178
Lesson LXXVII	Summary Of Optative Forms And Uses	179
Section 491	Exercises	179
Section 492	During The Terror.....	180
Lesson LXXVIII	Summary Of Imperative Forms And Uses	181
Section 497	Exercises	181
Section 498	The Lord's Prayer.....	182
Section 499	Father And Son	183
Lesson LXXIX	Summary Of Indicative Forms And Uses	184
Section 504	Exercises	184
Section 505	Learning Is But Recollection	185
Section 506	What Is Truth?	185
Appendix:	Principal Parts of Verbs Presented in Crosby and Schaeffer	186

List of Abbreviations

The following works are referred to, in the text and in the footnotes, by these abbreviations:

CS	Crosby, Henry Lamarr, and Schaeffer, John Nevin, <i>An Introduction to Greek</i> (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928).
LS	Liddell, H.G., <i>An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon, Founded on the Seventh Edition of Liddell and Scott's Greek-English Lexicon</i> (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1992).
LSJ	Liddell, H.G., Scott, Robert, Jones, Henry Stuart, <i>A Greek-English Lexicon</i> , 9 th ed., with 1968 Supplement (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1973).
OCD	<i>The Oxford Classical Dictionary</i> , 2 nd Edition with corrections, Hammond, N.G.L. and Scullard H.H., eds. (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1972).
Smyth	Smyth, Herbert W., <i>Greek Grammar</i> , rev. Gordon M. Messing (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1984).
<i>Books of the Bible</i>	
Acts	The Acts of the Apostles
James.	The Letter of James
John	The Gospel of John
1 John	The First Letter of John
Luke	The Gospel of Luke
Mark	The Gospel of Mark
Matthew	The Gospel of Matthew

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson I Declension of O-Stems

Section 7 Exercises

a) What use of the noun do the heavy type endings suggest?

Noun	Use	Noun	Use
ἀδελφ οῦ	Genitive Singular	ποταμ οῖς	Dative Plural
ἀδελφ οί	Nominative Plural	στρατηγ ῶν	Genitive Plural
στρατηγ οὓς	Accusative Plural	ποταμ όν	Accusative Singular
ἀδελφ ός	Nominative Singular	στρατηγ ῶν	Dative Singular

b) Read aloud in Greek and translate into English:

1. He was a general.
2. He has brothers.
3. They stop the general.
4. The generals were brothers.
5. There was a river.
6. He sends the brothers to the general.
7. He stops the generals.
8. They send the brother of the general.

c) Complete these sentences, adding endings and accents:

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔχει ἀδελφόν.
2. ἦσαν ποταμοί.
3. τοῖς στρατηγοῖς πέμπουσι τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς.

Lesson II Declension of O- Stems

Section 12 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. They are stopping the enemy.
2. He sends the man away from the Hellespont.
3. The brothers were small.
4. They send the friends from the river.
5. The war was just.
6. The enemy has worthy generals.
7. The general sends the men to his brother.
8. The men have worthy brothers.

b) Complete:

1. οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν μακροί.
2. τὸν ἀδελφόν πέμπει ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
3. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς φίλους πέμπουσι τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ.

Lesson III Present Indicative And Infinitive Active of Ω- Verbs

Section 18 Exercises

a) What do the portions in heavy type tell as to the person and number of the subject?

ἄγ ουσι	3 rd pers. pl.
λύο μεν	1 st pers. pl.
ἔχε ετε	2 nd pers. pl.
ἐθέλ ω	1 st pers. sing.
γράφ εις	2 nd pers. sing.

b)

1. We have the beautiful stones.
2. I wish to write to the good man.
3. And the general is leading the messenger away from the Hellespont.
4. The brothers wish to stop the horses.
5. The messenger has a good horse.
6. We wish to lead the friends from out of danger.
7. The enemy is destroying the horses of the generals.
8. The general was hostile to the messengers.

c) Complete:

1. οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἐθέλουσι γράφ**ειν**.
2. ἐθέλομεν τοὺς ἵππους ἀγ**ειν** ἐκ τοῦ ποταμ**οῦ**.
3. οἱ ἄγγελοι πολέμιοι ἦσαν τῷ στρατηγ**ῶ**.

Section 19

b) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ ἀδελφοὶ μῆκροὶ ἦσαν.
2. πέμπουσι τὸν ἄνθρωπον παρὰ τὸν στρατηγόν.
3. ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμπει τοὺς πολεμίους ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
4. πέμπει τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
5. ἀδελφούς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἦσαν.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson IV Declension of O- Stem Neuters

Section 26 Exercises

a) What probable use of the word is denoted by the heavy type endings?

ἄγ ουσι	3 rd person pl.
λύο μεν	1 st pers. pl.
ἔχε τε	2 nd pers. pl.
ἐθέλ ω	1 st pers. sing.
γράφ εις	2 nd pers. sing.

b) Translate:

1. In the plain the trees are plain.
2. A stadium was by the side of the river.
3. And they brought the fine gifts into the stadium.
4. The brothers wish to send horses to their friends [“to the side of their friends”].
5. The gifts are from the general.
6. We are leading the enemies from the plain.
7. The man is worthy of fine gifts.

c) Complete:

1. τὰ δὲ δένδρα ἦν μικρά.
2. ἵππους δ' ἄγετε εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
3. ἐν τῷ σταδίῳ ἦσαν οἱ ἀδελφοί.

d) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ λίθοι ἦσαν καλοί.
2. ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄγγελος πολέμιος ἦν τῷ στρατηγῷ.
3. οἱ φίλοι ἔχουσιν καλοὺς ἵππους.
4. ἐθέλει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐκ τοῦ κινδύνου ἄγειν.
5. οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἦσαν πολέμοι τῷ ἀγγέλῳ.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson V Review

Section 28 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. ὁ τῷ στρατηγῷ κίνδυνος ἦν μικρός.
2. δῶρα πέμπομεν παρὰ τοὺς φίλους.
3. οἱ δ' ἀδελφοὶ ἦσαν δίκαιοι.
4. ἐθέλετε γράφειν.
5. τὰ δένδρα ἦν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.
6. ὁ ἄγγελος πολέμιος ἦν τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ἀλλ' ὁ ἄγγελος ἄγει τοὺς ἵππους ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου.
2. τὰ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ δένδρα ἦν μικρά.
3. καὶ ἐθέλετε ἔχειν καλὰ δῶρα.
4. πέμπομεν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἰς τὸ στάδιον.
5. τὰ καλὰ δῶρα ἦν παρὰ τῶν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ φίλων.

Lesson VI Declension of A- Stems

Study Notes: Genitive Plural Formation

Note this explanation in CS, p. 15, note 4:

For the accent of all forms of *κῶμη* and *μάχη* except the genitive plural, see §V, *f*.

The genitive plural of *α*-stems originally ended in *-α(σ)ων*, Latin *-arum*.

Therefore, words of this declension regularly circumflex the ultima of the genitive plural because of the contraction of vowels.

According to Lesson XXIII, Attic Greek had a tendency to drop a *σ* when it comes between two vowels.

- The genitive plural of, e.g., *κῶμη* was originally “*κωμάσων*”, and followed the accent rules that Crosby & Schaeffer lay out in §V (p. xxvi).
- However, in Attic Greek, the *-άσων* case ending lost the sigma and combined the alpha and the omega into a single vowel with a circumflex accent¹.
 - Following the rules in §127 (a), the *α* and the *ω* combine to form *ω*.
 - Following the rules in §127 (b), the acute accent on the first of the contracted vowels becomes a circumflex when the two vowels are combined.
- In this way, “*κωμάσων*” became the familiar form “*κωμῶν*”.

¹ CS §127, p. 71.

Section 34 Exercises

a) What use of the word do portions in heavy type suggest?

σπονδὸν ῶν	Genitive plural of <i>a</i> - stem word. See Footnote 4 on page 15.
φυγῆν ῆ	Dative singular of <i>a</i> - stem word
μάχην ην	Accusative singular of <i>a</i> - stem word
κώμην αις	Dative plural of <i>a</i> - stem word
σκηναί ας	Accusative plural of <i>a</i> - stem word
φυλακῆν ῆς	Genitive singular of <i>a</i> - stem word
σπονδὸν αί	Nominative plural of <i>a</i> - stem word
σκηναί ή	Nominative singular of <i>a</i> - stem word

b) Translate:

1. We do not flee in the battles.
2. For the guard had a fine tent.
3. Those in the village are guarding the horses.
4. Those in the plain did not have a treaty².
5. You are sending fine gifts to the garrison.
6. The flight of the general was not honorable.
7. He is leading the enemy from the village.
8. The tents are obvious.

c) Complete:

1. τῆ δὲ κώμῃ ἦν φυλακῆ.
2. οὐκ ἦσαν σκηναί τῆ φυλακῆ.
3. οἱ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ οὐκ ἐθέλουσι τὰς σπονδὰς λυεῖν.

² Literally, "There was not treaty for those in the plain."

Lesson VII Declension of A- Stems – Continued

Section 39 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Is the market-place suitable for the army?
2. The guards flee through the plain.
3. You wished to lead the army for 10 stades.
4. The village had no supplies³.
5. And we are leading the army through the marketplace
6. On account of friendship they have a market place and supplies.
7. The friendly army was in the province.
8. He is sending the brother into the country.

b) Complete:

1. ἡ δὲ κώμη ἐπιτηδεῖα ἦν τῷ στρατηγῷ.
2. δέκα ἡμέρας ἡ στρατιὰ ἦν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
3. πέμπει δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τοῖς φίλοις.

c) Write in Greek:

1. ἦν ἵππος τῷ ἄγγελῷ.
2. αἱ σπονδαὶ μακραὶ ἦσαν.
3. οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ τὰς σκηνάς οὐ φυλάττουσιν.
4. ἡ δὲ φυγὴ τῷ στρατηγῷ οὐ δόλη ἦν.
5. τῇ δὲ φυλακῇ οὐκ ἦν ἐπιτήδεια.

³ Literally, "There were no supplies to[for] the village".

Lesson VIII Imperfect Indicative Active of Ω- Verbs

Study Notes: Table of Temporal Augments

α	becomes	η
ε	becomes	η
ο	becomes	ω
ι	becomes	ῑ
υ	becomes	ῡ
αι	becomes	η
φ	becomes	η
αυ	becomes	ηυ
ευ	becomes	ηυ
οι	becomes	ω

Section 47 Exercises

a) What do the portions in heavy type tell as to person and number of the subject?

ἦγο ν	1 st pers. sing. or 3 rd pers. pl.
ἔλυ ε	3 rd pers. sing.
ἔγραφο μεν	1 st pers. pl.
ἦθροιζε ς	2 nd pers. sing.
ἦθέλε τε	2 nd pers. pl.

Which personal endings of the imperfect are identical? **1st person singular and 3rd person plural.**

Which resemble endings of the present? **1st person plural and 2nd person plural.**

b) Translate:

1. Were you collecting stones alongside the river?
2. But we were sending the garrison to the brother.
3. The army was in the village and was seizing the provisions.
4. For some were fleeing from the market with a shout, [while, on the other hand] others were guarding the tents in silence.
5. The ancients had tiny villages.
6. The gifts were beautiful, but tiny⁴.
7. The deeds of the barbarians were fine, their words, friendly.

c) Complete:

1. ἤγετε τὸν ἵππον ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου.
2. καὶ τὸ ἔργον δῆλον ἦν τοῖς πολεμίοις.
3. ὁ δὲ κραυγῇ ἔφευγε εἰς τὴν κώμην.

d) Write in Greek:

1. ἡ στρατιὰ τῆ χώρα φιλίᾳ ἦν.
2. δέκα ἡμέρας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια φυλάττουσιν.
3. διὰ τὰς σπονδὰς οὐκ ἐθέλομεν λῦειν τὴν κώμην.
4. ἡ φυλακὴ φεύγουσι δέκα σταδίου.
5. ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν.

Section 48 Greek as a World Language

From Luke 6:45, an example of the μέν...δέ construction:

“The good man brings forth the good from the good treasure of his heart; but the evil man [brings forth] evil from evil.”

⁴ The purpose of μέν...δέ in this sentence is to contrast the qualities of the gifts – on the one hand, they are beautiful but, on the other, they are tiny. If the sentence described two sets of gifts, some beautiful, others tiny, the Greek might read καλὰ μὲν ἦν τὰ δῶρα, τὰ δὲ μικρά.

Lesson IX Future Indicative And Infinitive Active Of Ω- Verbs

Section 52 Exercises

a) Identify the person and number of the following forms and give the corresponding forms of the present:

Form	Person and Number	Corresponding Present Form
πέμψουσι	3 rd pl.	πέμπουσι
ἄξομεν	1 st pl.	ἄγομεν
γράφει	3 rd sing.	γράφει
φυλάξεις	2 nd sing.	φυλάττεις
ἄθροίσω	1 st sing.	ἄθροίζω
ἄρξετε	2 nd pl.	ἄρχετε
λύσειν	infinitive	λύειν

b) Translate:

1. The barbarians will suspect the deeds.
2. We are thinking that the barbarians do not suspect the gifts.
3. He intends to rule the country.
4. You will persuade the army to guard the long road.
5. The enemy will destroy the strong garrison.
6. We will pursue the messenger to the headquarters of the general.
7. But some will stop the enemy, others will collect the provisions.
8. He thinks that the fine road leads through the province.

c) Complete:

1. ὑπεύσουσιν οἱ πολέμοιοι τὸν στρατηγὸν λῦσειν τὰς σπονδάς.
2. μέλλεις λῦσειν τὴν ὁδόν;
3. οἱ μὲν διώξουσι τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ δὲ ἀρπάσουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

d) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι τοὺς ἵππους ἐν σιγῇ ἤθροισον.
2. κραυγῇ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἤρπαζον.
3. ὁ ἄνθρωπος τῷ ἀδελφῷ ἔγραφε.
4. τὰ ἔργα ἀρχαία ἦν, ἀλλὰ καλά.
5. ἐν λόγῳ ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν.

Lesson X First And Second Aorist Indicative And Infinitive Active of Ω- Verbs

Section 59 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. On account of his friendship the general wished to write a letter.
2. The remaining people suspected the messenger.
3. I thought that those remaining suspected the words of the messenger.
4. He persuaded the friends to destroy the houses.
5. You left the horses there.
6. From there we sent the messenger to the headquarters of the general.
7. We suspect that the garrison is fleeing from the houses.
8. The remaining enemy was fleeing through the pass.

b) Complete:

1. ἐνταῦθα ἔσχον δῶρα ἄξια.
2. οὐκ ἐθέλει ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰς πύλας λιπεῖν.
3. τὴν στρατιᾶν ἐνομίσατε ἐν τῇ μάχῃ φυγεῖν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. ἀρπάσομεν τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἵππους.
2. νόμιζε τοὺς πολεμίους φυλάττειν τὴν ὁδόν.
3. μέλλετε διώξειν τὴν φυλακὴν;
4. νομίζω τὸν ἄγγελον πείσειν τὸν στρατηγόν.
5. τὴν ἰσχυρὰν θύραν κραυγῇ λῦσουσιν.

Lesson XI Review**Section 60 Assignments**

f)

Active Voice				
Present				
s. 1.	παύω	διώκω	ἀρπάζω	λείπω
2.	παύεις	διώκεις	ἀρπάζεις	λείπεις
3.	παύει	διώκει	ἀρπάζει	λείπει
d. 2.	παύετον	διώκετον	ἀρπάζετον	λείπετον
3.	παύετον	διώκετον	ἀρπάζετον	λείπετον
p. 1.	παύομεν	διώκομεν	ἀρπάζομεν	λείπομεν
2.	παύετε	διώκετε	ἀρπάζετε	λείπετε
3.	παύουσι	διώκουσι	ἀρπάζουσι	λείπουσι
Present Infinitive	παύειν	διώκειν	ἀπάζειν	λείπειν
Imperfect				
s. 1.	ἔπαυον	ἐδίωκον	ἤρπαζον	ἔλειπον
2.	ἔπαυες	ἐδίωκες	ἤρπαζες	ἔλειπες
3.	ἔπαυε	ἐδίωκε	ἤρπαζε	ἔλειπε
d. 2.	ἐπαύετον	ἐδίωκετον	ἤρπάζετον	ἐλείπετον
3.	ἐπαύετην	ἐδιώκετην	ἤρπάζετην	ἐλείπέτην
p. 1.	ἐπαύομεν	ἐδιώκομεν	ἤρπάζομεν	ἐλείπομεν
2.	ἐπαύετε	ἐδιώκετε	ἤρπάζετε	ἐλείπετε
3.	ἔπαυον	ἐδίωκον	ἤρπαζον	ἔλειπον
Future				
s. 1.	παύσω	διώξω	ἀρπάσω	λείψω
2.	παύσεις	διώξεις	ἀρπάσεις	λείψεις
3.	παύσει	διώξει	ἀρπάσει	λείψει
d. 2.	παύσετον	διώξετον	ἀρπάσετον	λείψετον
3.	παύσετον	διώξετον	ἀρπάσετον	λείψετον
p. 1.	παύσομεν	διώξομεν	ἀρπάσομεν	λείφομεν
2.	παύσετε	διώξετε	ἀρπάσετε	λείψετε
3.	παύσουσι	διώξουσιν	ἀρπάσουσι	λείψουσιν
Future Infinitive	παύσειν	διώξειν	ἀρπάσειν	λείψειν

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Active Voice			
1st Aorist			
s. 1.	ἔπαυσα	ἐδίωξα	ἤρπασα
2.	ἔπαυσας	ἐδίωξας	ἤρπασας
3.	ἔπαυσε	ἐδίωξε	ἤρπασε
d. 2.	ἐπαύσατον	ἐδιώξατον	ἤρπάζατον
3.	ἐπαυσάτην	ἐδιωξάτην	ἤρπαζάτην
p. 1.	ἐπαύσαμεν	ἐδιώξαμεν	ἤρπάζαμεν
2.	ἐπαύσατε	ἐδιώξατε	ἤρπάσατε
3.	ἔπαυσαν	ἐδίωξαν	ἤρπασαν
1st Aorist Infinitive	παῦσαι	διῶξαι ⁵	ἀρπάσαι
2nd Aorist			
s. 1.	ἔλιπον		
2.	ἔλιπες		
3.	ἔλιπε		
d. 2.	ἐλίπετον		
3.	ἐλίπέτην		
p. 1.	ἐλίπομεν		
2.	ἐλίπετε		
3.	ἔλιπον		
2nd Aorist Infinitive	λιπεῖν ⁶		

e)

τῶ ἀξίῳ στρατηγῶ	τῶ ἀγαθῶ στρατηγῶ
τῇ ἀξίᾳ χώρα	τῇ ἀγαθῇ χώρα
τὰ ἀξία δῶρα	τὰ ἀγαθὰ δῶρα
τὴν ἀξίαν φυγὴν	τὴν ἀγαθὴν φυγὴν
τῆς ἀξίας φιλιᾶς ⁷	τῆς ἀγαθῆς φιλιᾶς
τᾶς ἀξίας φιλιᾶς ⁸	τᾶς ἀγαθᾶς φιλιᾶς
τῶν ἀξίων ἀγγέλων	τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἀγγέλων
ταῖς ἀξίαις κόμαις	ταῖς ἀγαθαῖς κόμαις

⁵ CS, §55c, p. 31: "The first aorist infinitive active is always accented on the penult."

⁶ CS, §55d, p. 31: The second aorist infinitive is accented on the ultima.

⁷ φιλιᾶ, -ās, ἡ "Friendship"

⁸ φίλιος, -ᾶ, -ον "Friendly"

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

f)

Word	Clue
ἔπεμπε	The augment “ε” indicates a past tense of the indicative.
ἄξομεν	For ἄγω, the “ξ” is characteristic of the future stem.
ἔλυσα μιν	The augment “ε” indicates a past tense of the indicative. The “σα” indicates the 1 st aorist.
γράψειν	For γράφω, the “ψ” is characteristic of the future stem.
ἔλειπε	The augment “ε” indicates a past tense of the indicative. For λείπω, the “ιπ” is characteristic of the 2 nd aorist stem.

g) Uses of the Greek cases to this point.

Genitive Uses:

- Possession (§4b).
- Place From Which (§9).
 - With common prepositions, e.g., ἀπό and ἐκ.

Dative Uses:

- Indirect Object (§4c).
- With adjectives expressing friendliness, hostility, association, fitness, etc. (§16).
- Possession (§32).
- Manner (§44).

Accusative

- Direct Object (§4d).
- Place To Which (§24).
 - With common prepositions, e.g., εἰς and παρά.
- Extent of Space (§37).
- Duration of Time (§37).

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 61 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. τὸν στρατηγὸν ὑπώπτευσαν λύειν τὰς σπονδὰς.
2. πείσει τοὺς βαρβάρους τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀρπάσαι.
3. τὴν στρατιᾶν ἐνόμιζε λείπειν τὴν ἀγοράν.
4. διὰ τῆς χώρας ἔφυγον δέκα σταδίους.
5. ἡ δὲ κόμη πολεμίᾳ ἦν τῇ στρατιᾷ.
6. οἱ μὲν σιγῇ ἐφύλαττον τὰς σκηναίς, οἱ δὲ κραυγῇ ἔφευγον.
7. ἀγορὰ οὐκ ἦν τῇ λοιπῇ στρατιᾷ.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ὑπώπτευον τὴν φυλακὴν οὐκ φυλάττειν τὰς πύλας.
2. οἱ ἐκ τῆς χώρας εἶχον τὰς ἐπιστολάς.
3. ἡ δὲ κόμη τοῖς βαρβάροις οὐκ φιλίᾳ ἦν.
4. διὰ τὴν φιλιᾶν τὰς σπονδὰς οὐκ λύσομεν.
5. οἱ μὲν τῷ ἔργῳ ἀγαθὸς ἦν, οἱ δὲ λόγῳ⁹.

⁹ The English could also be rendered: “οἱ μὲν κατὰ τὸ ἔργον, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸν λόγον”.

Lesson XII **Reading**

Section 65 **Marathon**

Darius was king of the Persians and ruled all of the people in Asia. He sent his friends as generals, with a large army and fleet against Athens. The generals lead the Persians into Marathon, into the plain which, indeed, the Athenians had come. There, the Athenians hastened at a run against the barbarians. They were 8 stades distant. The Persians thought that there was a madness in the Athenians. The battle on Marathon [plain] was long, but finally the Athenians pursued the barbarians into the sea and they seized seven of [their, the Persians'] ships.

-- Adapted from Herodotus, *Histories*, Book 6.

Lesson XIII Pronouns

Section 72 Exercises

a) What does **αὐτός** mean in these phrases?

τὰ αὐτὰ δῶρα	the same gifts
αὐτοὺς ἄγει	he leads them
τὰς θύρας αὐτάς	the doors themselves

b) Translate:

1. And the same army destroyed the tents.
2. Another general was leading barbarians who were friendly to him.
3. But he thought that they would suspect the plot.
4. The race itself was eight stades distant from the village.
5. Those in Athens plotted against each other.
6. It was time for the guard to lead him into the house in which were the other friends.
7. For the flight was plain to the enemy themselves
8. The other road led along the Hellespont.

c) Complete:

1. τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐπεβούλευσαν οἱ βάρβαροι οἷ αὐτῷ ἦσαν πολέμιοι.
2. αὐτοῖς πέμφομεν ἄλλο δῶρον ὃ ἔχομεν.
3. αὐτῇ ἦσαν ἄλλαι οἰκίαι.

Section 73 Some Axioms of Euclid

1. The equals of the same are equal to each other.
2. And if even be added to evens, the whole is even.
3. And if from evens an even be taken, the remainder is even.
4. And if equal be added to odd, the sum is odd.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XIV Demonstrative Pronouns

Study Notes: Declension Of ἀδιάβατος And Other Two-termination Adjectives

For compound adjectives, the masculine and the feminine forms are the same, like the Latin *omnis, omne*.

	Masculine/Feminine	Neuter
s. nom.	ἀδιάβατος	ἀδιάβατον
gen.	ἀδιαβάτου	ἀδιαβάτου
dat.	ἀδιαβάτῳ	ἀδιαβάτῳ
acc.	ἀδιάβατον	ἀδιάβατον
voc.	ἀδιάβατε	ἀδιάβατον
p. nom./voc.	ἀδιάβατοι	ἀδιάβατα
gen.	ἀδιαβάτων	ἀδιαβάτων
dat.	ἀδιαβάτοις	ἀδιαβάτοις
acc.	ἀδιαβάτους	ἀδιάβατα

Section 79 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. That boat was full of grain.
2. The gates themselves were strong.
3. He suspected that these guards were crossing the plain.
4. This place was friendly to them, but the grain was not good.
5. Those with him seized these provisions.
6. The following rivers are crossable in boats.
7. We are planning to bring to them these same things.

b) Complete:

1. οὗτοι τὸν πόλεμον παύσουσι ταῖς σπονδαῖς.
2. ἔπεμψαν τὰδε.
3. ἐκεῖναι αἱ πύλαι ἦσαν ἀδιαβατοὶ¹⁰.

¹⁰ See CS page 44, note 2.

c) Write in Greek:

1. ἡ θύρᾱ ἀπὸ ἀρχαίᾱ ἦν.
2. οἱ ἄλλοι πείσουσιν αὐτόν.
3. οἱ ἄγγελοι οὓς ἐπέμφε ἀλλήλοις ἐπιβουλεύονται.
4. Ἀθῆνᾱς ἡμεῖς αὐτοὶ λείψομεν.

Section 80 **λόγος of St. John's Gospel**

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was in the presence of God, and the Word was God. This one was, in the beginning, in the presence of God.

-- John 1:1.

Lesson XV *Feminine Nouns of the A-Declension.* Personal Pronouns

Section 85 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. We had wagons, you did not.
2. These men with the queen were crossing the bridge.
3. I, therefore, was thinking that you were guarding the house.
4. For she did not suspect that you were plotting against each other.
5. You and I had the same weapons¹¹.
6. If you do not lead the garrison to the sea, you are not breaking the treaty.
7. The cowardly ones fled in wagons, but the queen did not leave the bridge.
8. If the river was crossable, they were willing to cross it.

b) Complete:

1. ἡμεῖς μὲν τῇ βασιλείᾳ ἐπεβουλεύετε, ἡμεῖς δ' οὐ.
2. εἰ οὗτοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρᾳ, ἐφύλαξαν αὐτήν.
3. ὁ κακὸς ἄγγελος ἐμοὶ ἔγραψε ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολήν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. ἐκεῖνος βουλεύει τάδε.
2. αὐτὸν δὲ συμβουλεύσομεν ἀρπάσαι τὸν σῖτον.
3. οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς ἐν πλοίῳ διαβατὸς ἦν.
4. ταῦτα δῆλα ἦν.
5. ὁ σῖτος οὐκ ἦν τῷ πλοίῳ αὐτῷ.

Section 86 Translate This Fragment From Menander

The greatest source [lit. "beginning"] of evils among men is the good, the excessive good.

¹¹ Literally, "There were the same weapons to you and to me."

Lesson XVI Masculine Nouns of the A-Declension. Reflexive Pronouns

Section 91 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. If then the soldiers are remaining on the bridge, he thinks that they are breaking the treaty.
2. Xenias, and the hoplites with him, are marching forth 10 days' march.
3. I have my own province, you have yours.
4. They ordered these soldiers to guard the house.
5. He therefore thought that the satrap would not write the letters to him.
6. It was time for the satrap of that country to guard the pass with his own men.
7. They themselves¹² do not wish to seize the tents, but they suggest this to you.

b) Complete:

1. ἡμῶν μὲν οἱ πολῖται ἦσαν φίλοι, ὑμῶν δὲ πολέμοι.
2. Ξενίας γὰρ οὐχ ὑποπτεύσει τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἑαυτῷ ἐπιβουλεύειν.
3. ἐπὶ τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ σκηνὴν ἦγον τὸν σῖτον καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἃ ἦν ἐμοί.

c) Write in Greek:

1. ἡ δ' οὖν κακὴ βασιλεία πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν ἔφυγε.
2. σοὶ γὰρ ἦν ἅμαξα, ἐμοὶ δ' οὐ.
3. τὸν ποταμὸν γεφύρα διαβαίνουσι.
4. εἰ μὴ τὰ ὄπλα φυλάττουσι, τὰς σπονδὰς λύουσι.
5. ἐκεῖνα τὰ ὄπλα οὐκ ἦν ἐπὶ τῇ ἀμάξῃ.

Section 92 More Axioms of Euclid

1. If even be taken from odd, the remainder is odd.
2. And the doubles of the same are equal to each other.
3. And the halves of the same are equal to each other.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XVII Present and Imperfect Indicative and Present Infinitive of εἰμί. Enclitics.

Section 99 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. At that time it was not possible for us to be present.
2. And because of friendship they say that this man is not absent.
3. Is it then possible for the army to seize the horses?
4. But they are from the same country.
5. If you had not advised me, I would not have written the letter.
6. For he says that the plot is not yet evident.
7. From there we marched on five days' march to the sea.
8. But we would not yet be present, if the river were not crossable by boat.
9. He writes to me that the hoplites are not in the camp.

b) Complete:

1. καὶ αὐτοῖς οὐκ ἂν ἦν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ἐν καλῷ τόπῳ ἦν τὸ στρατόπεδον.
2. ἐκείνους τοὺς στρατιώτῃς φησὶ παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρῃ.
3. εἰ ἐκέλευσεν ἡμᾶς, ἐξηλάσαμεν ἂν ὀκτὼ σταθμούς.

c) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ στρατιῶται ἠθροισεν τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἐπιτήδεια.
2. οἱ πολῖται νομίζουσιν ἡμᾶς τὸν σῆτον ἑαυτοῖς ἄξειν.
3. φυλάξομεν τὴν γεφύραν τοῖς ἡμῶν αὐτῶν.
4. τῷ σατράπῃ ἐστὶν ἡ ἑαυτοῦ ἀρχή.
5. οἱ ὀπλίται ἐξήλασαν δεκά σταθμούς.

Section 100 In Hostile Territory

From there he marched out through Lycaonia. He plundered this country as though it were hostile. Next Cyrus dispatched the Cilician queen into Cilicia on the quickest way possible. And he sent with her soldiers whom Menon had, as well as Menon¹³.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.2.19-20.

¹³ Literally, "and him", referring to Menon, one of the Greek generals in the *Anabasis*.

Lesson XVIII Consonant Declension (K-Stems)**Section 105 Exercises**

a) What do the portions in heavy type tell as to the probable use of

γυναικ ί	dative singular
φυλάκ ων	genitive plural
Θρακ ός	genitive singular
φάλαγγ ες	nominative plural
σαλπικ ξι	dative plural
κήρυκ α	accusative singular

Distinguish between φυλακῶν and φυλάκων, φύλακας and φυλακάς:

φυλακῶν	Genitive plural of φυλακή, φυλακῆς ἢ “garrison, guard, guard duty”. Nouns of the -a declension are regularly accented with a circumflex on the ultima because the genitive plural originally ended in -άσων. Because the σ between two vowels is usually dropped, the genitive plural ending of the -a declension became -ῶν ¹⁴ .
φυλάκων	Genitive plural of φύλαξ, φύλακος ὁ “guard”
φύλακας	Accusative plural of φύλαξ. The accented antepenult shows that the α in the ultima is short, which means the form has to be the accusative plural of a consonant declension word.
φυλακάς	Accusative plural of φυλακή. The long -α in the ultima indicates an accusative plural of an -α declension noun. The acute accent on the ultima is another tip-off that this word comes from φυλακή.

¹⁴ CS, page 15, note 4.

b) Translate:

1. The guards fled down the road.
2. And within 10 days he will send a herald to us.
3. He will lead the woman to the camp.
4. If a capable phalanx were not present, the enemy would have plundered the [things] in the camp.
5. But on this day the guards suspected that he was pursuing the enemy's phalanx.
6. With the trumpet we ordered the soldiers to collect the horses.
7. In addition to these, they lead them down from the pass.
8. The herald and those with him will guard both the women and the supplies.

c) Complete:

1. πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἄξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πέντε ἡμέρας.
2. ὑποπτεύω τοὺς φύλακας φυγεῖν¹⁵ κατὰ ταύτην τὴν ὁδόν.
3. ἡ δὲ τοῦ Θρακῶς γυνὴ αὐτῷ ἔπεμψε τὴν σάλπιγγα.

d) Write in Greek:

1. οὐκ ἐξῆν παῦσαι τὴν ἐπιβουλήν.
2. εἰ ὑπόπτευσαν τὸν σατράπην, τὴν γέφυραν ἂν ἐφύλαξαν.
3. εἰ μὴ ἀπῆν, οἱ ὀπλίται οὐκ ἂν ἔμενον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τόπῳ¹⁶ πέντε ἡμέρας.
4. τοῦτοι οὐκ οὐπω εἰσὶν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.

¹⁵ 2nd aorist infinitive active of φεύγω.

¹⁶ χώρῳ is also possible.

Lesson XIX Consonant Declension (Δ - or T-Stems)

Section 110 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. But he had no money so as to send us both shields and spears.
2. In the night the archon sent the boys from the village.
3. You will feel grateful to me, for I shall lead you into Greece.
4. There is no water there for the horses and (as a result) he is ordering you to lead them to the river.
5. This one indeed was driving in his chariot alongside the phalanx.
6. The soldiers would not have had trouble if the herald had not broken his trumpet!
7. But if it is possible to persuade the herald with money, I advise you to remain there.
8. The wife and the children of the archon are riding in the carriage.

b) Complete:

1. τῷ γὰρ παιδί ἐστι πλοῖον, ὥστε διαβαίνειν τὸν ποταμόν.
2. χάριν ἔχουσιν ὑμῖν, ἄγετε γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐκ κακοῦ τόπου.
3. τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἔπεμψεν, ὥστε οἱ ὀπλῖται ἤθελον ἐλαύνειν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. τῇ δὲ σάλπιγγι τοὺς φύλακας ἐκέλευσε ἐλάσαι.
2. πέντε ἡμερῶν οἱ κήρυκες παρήσαν.
3. πρὸς τούτῳ τὰς τῆς βασιλείας ἀμάξας διήρπασαν.
4. ἡ δὲ γυνὴ ἔφυγε κατὰ ἐκείνην τὴν ὁδὸν.
5. εἰ ἡ φάλαγξ παρήν, οἱ πολέμοι οὐκ ἂν διήρπασον τὰς οἰκίᾱς.

Lesson XX Review**Section 111 Assignments**

d)

	θάλαττα	βασίλεα	ὀπλίτης	χάρις	ὔδωρ	νύξ
s. nom.	θάλαττα	βασίλεα	ὀπλίτης	χάρις	ὔδωρ	νύξ
gen.	θαλάττης	βασιλέας	ὀπλίτου	χάριτος	ὔδατος	νυκτός
dat.	θαλάττη	βασιλέα	ὀπλίτη	χάριτι	ὔδατι	νυκτί
acc.	θαλάττην	βασίλεαν	ὀπλίτην	χάριν	ὔδωρ	νύκτα
voc.	θάλαττα	βασίλεα	ὀπλίτα	χάρις	ὔδωρ	νύξ

e)

Dative Plurals	
φύλαξ	φύλαξι
δόρυ	δόρασι
ἄρχων	ἄρχουσι

f)

Demonstrative Adjectives			
	αὐτός	οὗτος	ὅδε
πολίτη	τῷ πολίτη αὐτῷ	τοῦτῳ τῷ πολίτη	τῷδε τῷ πολίτη
ἄσπίδες	αἱ ἄσπίδες αὐταί	αὗται αἱ ἄσπίδες	αἶδε αἱ ἄσπίδες
ἄρματα	τὰ ἄρματα αὐτά	ταῦτα τὰ ἄρματα	τάδε τὰ ἄρματα
νυκτῶν	τῶν νυκτῶν αὐτῶν	τούτων τῶν νυκτῶν	τῶνδε τῶν νυκτῶν
φύλακα	τὸν φύλακα αὐτόν	τοῦτον τὸν φύλακα	τόνδε τὸν φύλακα
ὀπλίτας	τοὺς ὀπλίτας αὐτούς	ταυτὰς τὰς ὀπλίτας	τούσδε τοὺς ὀπλίτας

g)

Conjugation of εἰμί in present and imperfect indicative	
	Active Voice
Present	
s. 1.	εἰμί
2.	εἶς
3.	ἐστί (ν)
d. 2.	ἐστόν
3.	ἐστόν
p. 1.	ἐσμέν
2.	ἐστέ
3.	εἰσί (ν)
Present Infinitive	εἶναι
Imperfect	
s. 1.	ἦν
2.	ἦσθα
3.	ἦν
d. 2.	ἦστον/ἦτον
3.	ἦστην/ἦτην
p. 1.	ἦμεν
2.	ἦτε
3.	ἦσαν

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 112 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. κατὰ ταύτην τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφυγον οἱ κήρυκες πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
2. οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι ἄρχοντες ἠθροίζον τοὺς ἑαυτῶν στρατιώτᾱς, ἐγὼ δὲ τοὺς ἑμαυτοῦ.
3. καὶ ὅδε ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατός ἐστι πλοίῳ.
4. πλοῖά ἐστὶν ὑμῖν, ὥστε τὸν ποταμὸν διαβαίνειν.
5. ἀλλὰ οἱ σὺν ἡμῖν ἠθέλον μένειν πέντε ἡμέρας.
6. ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄρματος ἦσαν αἱ ἀσπίδες ἃς ἠρπάσαμεν ἐκ τῆς σκηνῆς.
7. εἰ ἔμελλε τὰ δόρατα ἄξειν, παρῆν ἄν.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ὁ σατράπης αὐτὸς ἔγραψε τὰδε.
2. ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν ὁ ἄρχων οἴσει τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ ἄρματα.
3. εἰ ἡ βασιλεία μὴ σὺν αὐτῇ φύλακα ἦνεγκε, οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης αὐτὴν ἂν ἐδίωξε.
4. φησὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τῇ γεφύρᾳ εἶναι.
5. οἱ δὲ φύλακες ὀκτῶ πλοῖα ἔλυσαν, ὥστε οὐκ ἐξῆν τὸν ποταμὸν διαβαίνειν.

Lesson XXI Participles

Section 119 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. When we have destroyed the bridge we will cause trouble for that army.
2. He sent those who were at hand as friends¹⁷.
3. Since they indeed had money he hindered them from plundering the country.
4. The queen supplied money to Cyrus, having faith in his character.
5. There was hope, even to the exiles.
6. He ordered the soldiers to take up arms and be present.
7. "Fugitive" is the name for the person who is fleeing.
8. Were you furnishing the market you would have us as friends.

b) Complete:

1. οἱ διώκοντες ἀπὸ τῶν φευγόντων ἀπεῖχον ὀκτῶ σταδίους.
2. τρέψαντες οὖν τοὺς πολεμίους σπεύσετε πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν.
3. τοῖς μὲν μένουσι πιστεύσομεν, τοῖς δὲ ἐξελεύουσιν οὐ.
4. οὗτος γὰρ λαβὼν τὰ χρήματα ἤθροισε στρατιάν.

Section 120 A Traitor Caught

Orontas was plotting against Cyrus. He said to Cyrus that if he should give him soldiers he would slay the enemies who were burning the country. When Cyrus had heard this it seemed good to him, and he ordered him [Orontas] to take the troops. Orontas, who thought that the soldiers were his, wrote a letter to the king that he would come with the soldiers. He gives this letter to a trusty man, so he thought. But the man, having taken the letter, gives it to Cyrus.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.6.2-3.

¹⁷ This phrase *ὡς φίλους* might also have the meaning "as if [they were] friends".

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson XXII πάς Reading

Section 123 Exercises

a) Write in Greek:

Every bridge:	πάσα γέφυρα
The entire night:	ἡ πάσα νύξ
All the rulers:	πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες
All spears:	πάντα δόρατα
All the water:	πάν τὸ ὕδωρ

b) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται τρέψουσιν εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς διώκοντας.
2. διαρπαζόντες τὰ ἑπτὰ πλοῖα πράγματα παρέσχον.
3. οἱ φυγάδες οὐκ πίστευσιν τοῖς ἐνταῦθα μένουσιν.
4. ἐλπίδα ἔξοντες μέλλομεν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον σπεῦσαι.

Section 126 The Review Of An Army

Thereupon, then, was the review of Cyrus' army. First the barbarians marched by. Next, Cyrus, in a chariot and the Cilician woman, in a covered carriage, drove by the Greeks. All had beautiful equipment. Having driven by [them] he sent the herald to the Greek generals, who ordered them to advance [their] whole phalanx. Because of this, the soldiers, advancing with a shout, hastened with one accord [ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου] upon the tents. The barbarians were afraid, so that, as a result, they fled. And both the Cilician woman in the covered carriage and those from the assembly [fled], having left behind their money. Thus then the Greeks came, laughing, upon the tents.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.2.16-18.

Lesson XXIII Contract Verbs in -έω

Section 130 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. And, indeed, when you demand this you injure me.
2. For I would not be making war on him if he were acting justly [lit. "if he were doing just things"].
3. To all the citizens it seemed best thus to make war.
4. While all were doing the same things he was calling the archon into his tent.
5. To us, indeed, it seemed best to ask for spears.
6. Although this woman suspects a plot it isn't possible for her to flee.
7. For since you are good you owe good people.
8. If you loved Greece you would be making war on the barbarians.

b) Complete:

1. φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν ἢ βασιλεία οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀδικεῖν.
2. τούτου καλέσαντος οἱ ὀπλίται ἤκουσιν ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν.
3. καὶ δὴ ταῦτα αἰτῶν ἡμᾶς ἂν ἠδίκεις.

c) Write in Greek:

1. οὗτοι δὴ πᾶσαν οἰκίαν διήρπασαν.
2. πάντες οἱ παῖδες ἤθελον ἐλάσαι πρὸς τὰς τῶν φίλων σκηνάς.
3. κατὰ τὸν πάντα Ἑλλήσποντον οὐκ ἔστιν γέφυρα.
4. πρῶτον μὲν παρήλαυνον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἔπειτα οἱ ἄλλοι.

Section 131 Human Frailty

Whence [come] the wars and whence [come] the battles among you? [Do they not come] from here, from your pleasures? You desire, and you do not have, you fight and you make war...you demand, and you do not receive, because you ask evilly.

-- James 4:1-3.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XXIV Present And Imperfect Indicative, Present Infinitive, And Participle Of παύω In Middle and Passive Voice

Section 141 Exercises

a) What do the portions in heavy type tell as to person, number, and voice?

βούλ ει	2 nd pers sing middle of βούλομαι	ἔπε σθε	2 nd pers pl middle
φυλάττ ουσι	3 rd pl act	ἔρχο νται	3 rd pers pl middle
συμβουλεύ εις	2 nd pers sing act	ἐμάχο ντο	3 rd pers pl middle
ὑποπτεύ ει	3 rd pers sing act or 2 nd pers sing middle/passive	ἦχθ ου	2 nd pers sing middle
πέμπο μεν	1 st pers pl active	πορευό μεθα	1 st pers pl middle
μεταπέμπε ται	3 rd sing middle	διώκ ω	1 st pers sing act
ἄχθ μαι	1 st pers sing middle	ἔχε τε	2 nd pers pl act
ἠδό μην	1 st pers sing middle	εἶπε το	3 rd pers sing middle

b) What is the probable meaning of the middle of the following verbs?¹⁸

βουλεύω	“plan with oneself”, i.e., deliberate, determine
φυλάττω	“guard oneself”, i.e., to keep watch.
παρέχω	“furnish oneself”, i.e., to produce
συμβουλεύω	“advise, counsel oneself”, i.e., to deliberate
τρέπω	“to turn oneself”, i.e., to look (in a certain direction)

¹⁸ These answers are from *LS*.

c) Translate:

1. Then, indeed, they were burdened by the journey.
2. The supplies are being seized by those who are traveling.
3. Therefore, since we have money we are purchasing food for ourselves.
4. But were you not obeying the messenger?
5. He planned to come with the others.
6. After this, the friends, because they were pleased by the gift, were following him.
7. All are being summoned by the satrap.
8. But I do not wish to fight my own friends. ["fight with my own friends"]
9. Therefore, he is pleased by those who are obeying, those who are not [obeying], he summons.

d) Complete:

1. οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο μετὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος, οἱ δὲ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.
2. τῷ βουλομένῳ ἔξεστιν Ἀθηνᾶς ἐκλιπεῖν.
3. οἱ πολῖται τοῖς μαχομένοις ἤχθοντο.

e) Write in Greek:

1. εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ἔχειν ἐδόκει, οὐκ ἂν ταῦτα ἤτοῦμεν.
2. ἐλπίδος οὔσης, ὁ στρατηγός ἐπὶ τοὺς Θρᾶκας ἐπολεμεῖτο.
3. οἱ πολέμοιοι αὐτὸν σπεύδοντα πρὸς τοῦτον τὸν τόπον εἶλον.
4. πάντων παρόντων, ὁ Κύρος αὐτὸς μετεπέμψατο τὸν ἄγγελον εἰς τὴν σκηνήν.

Section 142 A Heavy Snowfall

When they were encamped, there was, in that area, a heavy snow during the night, with the result that it hid both the equipment and the men who were lying down . And the snow impeded the horses.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 4.4.11.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XXV**Middle And Passive Of Verbs in -έω****Section 146 Exercises**

a) Translate:

1. And so they are choosing other generals before they arrive at the sea.
2. We will lead you through friendly country, since you wish to hurry.
3. This general alone is taking care of all the soldiers.
4. But they did not make war until it seemed good to all.
5. Before they fled into the camp they were captured by the barbarians.
6. Since we travel up through unfriendly country we are choosing them as leaders.
7. Indeed, taking care of the horses thus they came to their friends.
8. But since you choose these, we are leading you into Greece.

b) Complete:

1. οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἤδοντο πρὶν τὸν δεσπότην ἐλθεῖν.
2. πάντων τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οὕτως ἐπιμελεῖται ὥστε αὐτῷ εἶναι φίλους.
3. ἐπεὶ ὁ σατράπης ἀνὰ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἦλθεν, ἤτησε καὶ στρατιώτῃς καὶ ἵππους.
4. περὶ τούτου ὁ δεσπότης λόγους ἐποιεῖτο ᾧδε.

c) Write in Greek:

1. μεταπέμπει ὑπὸ τοῦ παιδός.
2. ὁ Κῦρος σὺν πᾶσι τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώταις ἔρχεται.
3. τοῖς διώκουσιν ἐθέλει μάχεσθαι;
4. ἄχθοντες τῇ πορείᾳ ἐπαύσαντο ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ κώμῃ πέντε ἡμέρας.
5. ἐνταῦθα ἔμενον φυλαττόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν.

Section 147 A Wise Camel

A camel, being ordered to dance by its master said: "But I am ungainly not only when dancing but even when walking around."

-- Adapted from Aesop, 182.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XXVI Future and Aorist Middle

Section 156 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. The guards will be sufficient to await the enemy.
2. Few promised to follow him.
3. For it will not be hard to prepare the house.
4. The young people prepared themselves as if to follow the despot.
5. He led the army from there, holding the river on his right.
6. Since, therefore, you were brave, I will be eager not only to provide gifts, but even to receive you as friends.
7. It was agreed by everyone that he was brave.

b) Complete:

1. ἀγγέλους δ' οὖν πέμπει ἄξοντας τὰς ἀμάξᾱς.
2. εἰ μὴ ἀφίκεσθε, ὀλίγοι ἂν ἐνόμισαν ὑμᾶς γενέσθαι προθύμους.
3. ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡ νύξ, ὀλίγοις ἦν θυμὸς ἔπεσθαι.
4. καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἄρχοντα πάντες οἱ πολῖται ἐβούλοντο μένειν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. πρὶν τὸν δεσπότην ἀφικέσθαι, οἱ φύλακες τῶν φυγάδων ἐπεμελοῦντο.
2. τῶν δὲ δοράτων ἀλισκόντων, οἱ περὶ ἡμῖν ἔφυγον.
3. οὐκ ἤθελον ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, πρὶν οἱ πολῖται αὐτὸν ἔπεισαν.
4. ἐκείνων ἀλισκόντων, ἡμῖν δοκεῖ ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ἄρχοντας.

Section 157 Dramatis Personae

Darius and Parysatis had two sons: the elder, Artaxerxes; the younger, Cyrus. When Darius was ill and suspected the end of his life, he desired their presence [lit. "that they be present"]. And so the elder was at his side. But he [Darius] summoned Cyrus from the territory of which he made him satrap. And indeed he was general of all those who were collected in the plain of Castolus.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.1.1-2.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XXVII **Review****Section 158** **Assignments**

d)

Clues to...						
		Mood	Tense	Voice	Person	Number
δέξονται	3 rd pers. pl., fut. ind. act.	-ο	ξ	-ντ	-νται	-νται
γενέσθαι	pres. inf. mid.	-σθαι	Accent not recessive	-σθ	--	--
φιλήσω	masc. nom. sing., fut. part. act.	-σων	σ	-ησων	--	-σων
ἀφιζόμενος	masc. nom. sing., fut. part. mid.	-μενος	ξ	-μενος	--	-ος
διῶξαι	1 st aor. inf. act.	-αι	ξ; accent on penult	-αι	--	--
ἐπεισάμην	1 st pers. sing., 1 st aor. ind. mid.	augment	-α	-μην	-μην	-μην
ἐποιεῖτο	3 rd pers. sing., imperf. ind. mid.	augment	con- traction w/ accent: εῖ	-το	-το	-το
σπεύδομεν	1 st pers. pl., pres. ind. act.	-ο	present stem + ομεν	-ομεν	-μεν	-μεν
ἐλάβετε	2 nd pers. pl., 2 nd aor. ind. act.	augment	2 nd aor. stem	-ετε	-τε	-τε
ὑπισχνόμεθα	1 st pers. pl., pres. ind. mid.	-ομεθα	pres. stem	-μεθα	-μεθα	-μεθα

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

		Mood	Tense	Voice	Person	Number
ἦτουν	1 st pers. sing., imperf. ind. act.	augment	pres. stem/sec- ondary ending	-ουν	-ουν	-ουν
ἀθροίζομαι	1 st pers. sing., pres. ind. mid.	-ομαι	-ομαι	-μαι	-μαι	-μαι
μάχεσθε	2 nd pers. pl., pres. ind. mid.	-εσθε	pres. stem/pri- mary ending	-σθε	-σθε	-σθε
ἐγένου	2 nd pers. sing., 2 nd aor. ind. mid.	augment means ind. mood in this case; not imper.	augment; 2 nd aor. stem.	-ου	-ου	-ου
ἄγοντος	masc./neut. gen. sing., pres. part. act.	-οντος	present stem	-οντος	--	-οντος

e)

	3 rd Person Singular							
	Indicative Active				Indicative Middle			
	Present	Imperf	Fut	Aorist	Present	Imperf	Future	Aorist
πέμπω	πέμπει	ἔπεμπε	πέμψει	ἔπεμψε	πέμπεται	ἐπέμπετο	πέμψετο	ἐπέμψατο
ἄγω	ἄγει	ἦγε	ἄξει	ἦγαγε	ἄγεται	ἦγετο	ἄξετο	ἦγάγετο
ἀθροίζω	ἀθροίζει	ἦθροιζε	ἀθροίσει	ἦθροισε	ἀθροίζεται	ἦθροίζετο	ἀθροίσετο	ἦθροίσατο

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

f)

fut. part. act. of <i>πείθω</i>	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
s. nom	<i>πείσων</i>	<i>πείσουσα</i>	<i>πείσον</i>
gen.	<i>πείσοντος</i>	<i>πεισούσης</i>	<i>πείσοντος</i>
dat.	<i>πείσοντι</i>	<i>πεισούση</i>	<i>πείσοντι</i>
acc.	<i>πείσοντα</i>	<i>πείσουσαν</i>	<i>πείσον</i>
d. nom., acc., voc.	<i>πείσοντε</i>	<i>πεισούσᾱ</i>	<i>πείσοντε</i>
gen., dat.	<i>πεισόντων</i>	<i>πεισούσαιν</i>	<i>πεισόντων</i>
p. nom.	<i>πείσοντες</i>	<i>πείσουσαι</i>	<i>πείσοντα</i>
gen.	<i>πεισόντων</i>	<i>πεισουσῶν</i>	<i>πεισόντων</i>
dat.	<i>πείσουσι</i>	<i>πεισούσαις</i>	<i>πείσουσι</i>
acc.	<i>πείσοντας</i>	<i>πεισούσᾱς</i>	<i>πείσοντα</i>

1 st aor. part. act. of <i>πείθω</i>	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
s. nom	<i>πείσᾱς</i>	<i>πεισᾶσα</i>	<i>πείσαν</i>
gen.	<i>πείσαντος</i>	<i>πεισᾶσης</i>	<i>πείσαντος</i>
dat.	<i>πείσαντι</i>	<i>πεισᾶση</i>	<i>πείσαντι</i>
acc.	<i>πείσαντα</i>	<i>πείσᾶσαν</i>	<i>πείσαν</i>
d. nom., acc., voc.	<i>πείσαντε</i>	<i>πεισᾶσᾱ</i>	<i>πείσαντε</i>
gen., dat.	<i>πεισάντων</i>	<i>πεισᾶσαιν</i>	<i>πεισάντων</i>
p. nom.	<i>πείσαντες</i>	<i>πείσᾶσαι</i>	<i>πείσαντα</i>
gen.	<i>πεισάντων</i>	<i>πεισᾶσῶν</i>	<i>πεισάντων</i>
dat.	<i>πείσᾶσι</i>	<i>πεισᾶσαις</i>	<i>πείσᾶσι</i>
acc.	<i>πείσαντας</i>	<i>πεισᾶσᾱς</i>	<i>πείσαντα</i>

g)

ου = ε+ο; ε+ου.

ει = ε+ε.

ω = ε+ω.

ω=a+ο; α+ω¹⁹.¹⁹ CS, §418b, p. 226.

h)

Attributive participle²⁰:

- A participle is used as an adjective in the attributive position:
 - Between the article and noun:
 - Following the noun, with the article repeated.
- The attributive participle has the force of an attributive adjective.

Circumstantial participle²¹:

- The participle is used without an article and in agreement with a noun or pronoun.
 - The noun or pronoun may be expressed or implied.
- The circumstantial participle may express
 - time of an action.
 - means or cause of an action.
 - condition or attendant circumstances of an action.

²⁰ CS, §116a, p. 65 and §31a, p. 16.

²¹ CS, §116b, p. 65.

Section 159 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. ἔχων τὸ δόρυ ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ ἐπορεύσατο²² τὴν πᾶσαν ἡμέραν.
2. ἡμῖν ἐστὶν ἐλπίς τοὺς φυγάδας ἀφίξεσθαι παρὰ τοὺς φίλους.
3. ὑπώπτευσε τοὺς πολίτας βουλευέσθαι ἐλεῖν ἄλλον ἄρξοντα.
4. ἀνὰ χώρῶν φιλιᾶν Ξενίας ἔπεμψεν ἀγγέλους ἀθροίσοντας καὶ ἵππους καὶ ὄπλα.
5. ὑπὸ πάντων καλὸς εἶναι ὠμολογεῖτο.
6. τῆς νυκτὸς γενομένης οἱ νέοι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
7. οἱ ἄρχοντας ἐλομένοι μόνοι ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται μάχεσθαι.
8. ταῦτα ὑπέσχετο πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους πράγματα παρασχεῖν.

b) Write in Greek:

1. οὐ δυνήσεται δέξεσθαι τοὺς νέους.
2. παρασκευούνται ὥστε ἐλαύνειν.
3. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤγαγεν αὐτοὺς ἀνὰ τὸ πεδῖον τῶν πολεμίων ἐπομένων.
4. ὀλιγοὶ ἦσαν ἐθέλοντες ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖσθαι.
5. ὁ αὐτοῦ φόβος οὐκ ἐπαύσατο πρὶν τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφίκετο.
6. οἱ φύλακες ἐκώλυσαν τοὺς διαρπάζοντας ἐλεῖν τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας.
7. οἱ φυγάδες τῆς νυκτὸς ἀφίξονται.

²² The verb could also be imperfect middle indicative: ἐπορεύετο.

Lesson XXVIII Word Study. Reading

Section 162 Οὐ φροντὶς Ἴπποκλείδῃ²³

Hippocleides ordered the piper to pipe a melody. When the piper obeyed, he [Hippocleides] danced well, as it seemed to him, but Cleisthenes was suspicious of the whole affair. After a little while Hippocleides summoned a table [i.e., asked for a table to be brought in]. When the table had been brought in, he first danced Laconian [Spartan] steps[lit. “figures”] on it; next, other Attic [steps]; third, bracing his head on the table he gesticulated with his legs [i.e., he stood on his head, on the table, and pantomimed dance steps in the air with his legs]. Cleisthenes was waiting, being annoyed at the first and then the second dance steps, and no longer wishing, on account of his [Hippocleides’] dancing and shamelessness, that he would become [his] son-in-law, [but] not wishing to harsh towards him [Hippocleides]. [But] when that one [Hippocleides] had gesticulated with his legs, he [Cleisthenes] said: “O son of Tisander, you have danced away your marriage”. But Hippocleides said: “Hippocleides doesn’t care!”

-- Adapted from Herodotus, *The Histories*, 6.129.

²³ “Hippocleides Doesn’t Care”

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

Lesson XXIX **Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns**

Section 170 **Exercise**

Translate:

1. Who plundered the tents?
2. Now certain people²⁴ say that that man took these things from his brother.
3. Why did you promise this²⁵?
4. If they were ordering anything they would be²⁶ sending a messenger to you.
5. When will the battle begin?
6. And then, once, marching through the plain he came into a certain village in which there was no water.
7. How many horses will you seize, and from whom?
8. For we were suspecting that somewhere some barbarians were following us.
9. And once there were accounts concerning the journey.

Section 171 **Time The Healer**

Of all necessary evils time is the healer. It even will now heal you.
-- Menander, fragment.

Section 172 **The Keynote of Greek Genius**

Oh Solon, Solon, the Greeks are always children, there does not exist an old Greek. For you are all young in [your] spirits.
-- Plato, *Timaeus*, 22 B.

²⁴ "Certain people" = *τινες*. "That man" = *ἐκεῖνον*. "These things" = *ταῦτα*.

²⁵ Or "These things" [*ταῦτα*].

²⁶ The *ἄν* in the apodosis shows that it is a contrary to fact condition (CS, §97, p. 53).

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson XXX Subjunctive Active

Section 178 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. But let us trust in the man whom they sent.
2. We do these things so that you might love us.
3. Let us no longer destroy the houses nor the tents.
4. He always takes care of the soldiers so that they might be strong.
5. They will send a letter to the satrap so that he won't seize the fugitives.
6. Let's not abandon the equipment.
7. They chose him general so that they might hasten towards Greece.
8. Both the women and the children are fleeing into the camp so that they not suffer evil.

b) Complete:

1. ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ δὲ τρόπῳ τινὶ διαβαίνειν τόνδε τὸν ποταμὸν ἵνα **μηκέτι** κακὰ πάθωμεν.
2. φύγωμεν εἰς χώραν φιλίαν **ἔχοντες** τὰς τε γυναῖκας **καὶ** τοὺς παῖδας.
3. ἐκείνας **τάσδε** ἐπιστολὰς γράφει ὅπως αὐτοὺς **πείσῃ**.

c) Write in Greek:

1. ποῦ εἶ;
2. περὶ τοῦ ὕδατος ποτε λόγοι εἰσίν.
3. ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τράπεζαι τινές εἰσιν.
4. στρατιώτης τις τρέχων ἦλθε ἵνα σῆτον αἰτήσῃ.
5. τίνα τὰ δῶρα ἦν ἂ παρὰ τῶν φίλων ἐδέξω;

Section 179 The Better Part of Valor

A tree was thrown into a river by the wind. As it was carried down the river it said to the rushes: "Why, though you are slender, do you not suffer [this] evil?" The rushes said: "You, on the one hand, fight with the winds and because of this are thrown down, but we yield to them so that we do not suffer [this] evil."

-- Adapted from Aesop, 179 c.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson XXXI **Subjunctive Middle and Passive. Aorist Subjunctive Middle**

Study Notes: Uses of Subjunctive Tenses in Conditional Statements

Crosby & Schaeffer do not make it clear that, when the subjunctive is used in conditions, neither the present nor aorist tense denotes a time value. Smyth tells us that, in conditional statements

The present subjunctive views an act as continuing (not completed); the aorist subjunctive as simply occurring (completed). Neither tense has any time of itself. The aorist subjunctive may mark the action of the protasis as completed before the action of the principal clause (cp. the Lat. future perfect).²⁷

Section 185 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. When did fear keep (“prevent”) the satrap from his journey?
2. If they aren’t aided by Cyrus they won’t be friendly to him.
3. It is necessary to prepare as if awaiting the enemy.
4. If he [ever] does not supply a market, they seize the grain.
5. If they supply a market, we will not seize the provisions.
6. It is necessary to suffer this so that we might have wisdom.

b) Complete:

1. ἐὰν μὴ ἔχωμεν χρήματα, οὐκ ἔχομεν φίλους.
2. ἦν ἡμᾶς διδάξωσιν, ἡμῖν γενήσονται ὠφέλιμοι.
3. ποῦ δεῖ διαβαίνειν ἵνα ἐκείνους φύγωμεν;

c) Write in Greek:

1. ἄρχοντας αἰρώμεθα.
2. μέλλει ἵνα οἱ παῖδες μὴ κακά πάθωσιν.
3. μὴ ἀδικώμεθα τοὺς ἡμῶν πολεμίους.
4. σπεύδωμεν ἵνα τὰ ὄπλα φέρειν ἡμᾶς μὴ ἀναγκάζωσιν.

²⁷ Smyth, §2325.

Section 186 Philosopher And Friend

Socrates then spoke concerning these matters: “Accordingly even I myself – just as some other man is pleased by an excellent horse – so I even more take pleasure in excellent friends, and if I might have something excellent, I teach it to my friends. And I go through, with my friends, the treasures of the wise men of old, which they, having written them, left behind in books. And if we should see something excellent, we pick it out. And we think it a great gain, if we should become useful to one another.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Memorabilia*, 1.6.14.

Lesson XXXII Optative Active

Section 194 Exercises

a) What mood is indicated by the portions in heavy type?

<i>φεύγ ειν</i>	infinitive (<i>φεύγειν</i> is pres inf act of <i>φεύγω</i>)	<i>φευγ οιεν</i>	optative (pres. opt. act.; 3 rd pers. pl of <i>φεύγω</i>)
<i>φύγ η</i>	subjunctive (<i>φυγη</i> is from <i>φεύγω</i> . It is 2 nd aor. subj. act; 3 rd pers. sing. or 2 nd aor. subj. mid; 2 nd pers. sing.)	<i>πείσ ει</i>	indicative (fut. ind. act; 3 rd pers. sing of <i>πείθω</i>)
<i>πείσ ειε</i>	optative (1 st aor. opt. act.; 3 rd pers. sing of <i>πείθω</i>)	<i>ποι οῖ μεν</i>	pres optative (pres. opt. act; 1 st pers. pl. of <i>ποιέω</i>)
<i>πείσ οι</i>	optative (fut. opt. act; 3 rd pers. sing. of <i>πείθω</i>)	<i>ποιήσ αι μεν</i>	aor optative (1 st aor. opt. act; 1 st pers. pl. of <i>ποιέω</i>)
<i>ποι ῶ μεν</i>	subjunctive (pres. subj. active; 1 st pers. pl. of <i>ποιέω</i>)	<i>πράξ ω σι</i>	subjunctive (1 st aor. subj. act.; 3 pers. pl. of <i>πράττω</i>)

b) Translate:

1. The mercenaries did this (did these things) so they might have [their] pay.
2. Would that the gods provide us both silver and gold!
3. May we never think that the gods are doing evil.
4. May they do well what they wish.
5. I do not have silver and gold. What I have, this will be yours.
6. And he helps them so that he might appear to be a valuable friend.
7. In their long life even the just people suffer not a few evils.

c) Complete:

1. ἐπεὶ ὁ ξένος ἐδέξατο τὸ ἀργύριον, εἶχε **χάριν**.
2. εἴθε μὴ οἱ πόνοι **εἶεν** χαλεποί.
3. ταῦτά γε ἔπραξαν ἵνα **μὴ** κακὰ πάθοιεν.
4. εἰ γὰρ ἡ χώρα ἀνὰ ἣν πορευσόμεθα **εἶη** φιλιᾶ.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

d) Write in Greek:

1. διδάσκων ταῦτα ὑμῖν γίνεται ὠφέλιμος.
2. ἐὰν τὰ χρήματα ἔχῃς, φίλους ἔξεις.
3. ἐὰν ἠδῆταί τινι, οὗτος ἀεὶ ἐθέλει ἡμᾶς διδάξαι.
4. εἰ μὴ τοὺς φυγάδας ὠφέλησας, οὐκ ἂν χάριν σοι ἔσχον.

Section 195 Loose Logic

The dark earth drinks,
The trees drink her,
The sea drinks the streams,
The sun [drinks] the sea,
The moon [drinks] the sun,
Why do you fight me, comrades,
A man who also wishes to drink?
-- Anacreontic.

Section 196 Q.E.D.

Diogenes the philosopher said that all things belong to the wise. For all things belong to the gods. The gods are friends to the wise. But the [possessions] of friends are common [to the friends]. Therefore, all things belong to the wise.
-- Adapted from Diogenes Laertius, 6.72.

Lesson XXXIII Present Optative Middle And Passive. Future And Aorist Optative Middle

Study Notes: Use of Optative Tenses in Conditional Statements

Crosby & Schaeffer do not discuss the fact that the tenses in the optative do not denote actual time when used in conditional statements. As Smyth notes, the tense of the verb in the optative mood denotes either continuous or single actions:

The present optative views an action as continuing (not completed); the aorist optative, as simply occurring (completed). (The future optative is never used except to represent a future indicative in indirect discourse.) The perfect (rare) denotes completion with resulting state.²⁸

Study Notes: Summary of Primary and Secondary Tenses

- Primary
 - Present
 - Future
 - Perfect
 - Future Perfect
- Secondary
 - Imperfect
 - Aorist
 - Pluperfect

²⁸ *Smyth*, §2331.

Study Notes: Summary of Subjunctive And Optative Endings

Subjunctive

The Subjunctive uses same variable vowel and personal endings for all tenses and voices.

	Active	Middle and Passive
s. 1.	-ω	-ω μαι
2.	-ῆς	-ῆ (-ῆσαι)
3.	-ῆ	-ῆται
p. 1.	-ωμεν	-ωμεθα
2.	-ῆτε	-ῆσθε
3.	-ωσι (ν)	-ωνται

Optative

The Optative uses ι, ιη, ιε as its mood sign. In addition, the Present, Future and 2nd Aorist tenses use ο as the variable vowel.

	Present, Future, 2 nd Aorist Active	Present, Future Middle and Passive; 2 nd Aorist Middle
s. 1.	-οι μι	-οι μῆν
2.	-οις	-οι ο (-οι σο)
3.	-οι	-οι το
p. 1.	-οιμεν	-οιμεθα
2.	-οιτε	-οισθε
3.	-οιεν	-οιεντο

The 1st Aorist, in the Optative, has two forms for 2nd singular and 3rd person singular and plural. The long form is characteristic of Attic; the alternate form (used in other dialects) is given in parentheses.

	1 st Aorist Active	1 st Aorist Middle
s. 1.	-αι μι	-αι μῆν
2.	-εις (-αις)	-αι ο (-αι σο)
3.	-ειε (-αι)	-αι το
p. 1.	-αιμεν	-αιμεθα
2.	-αιτε	-αισθε
3.	-ειαν (-αιεν)	-αιεντο

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Study Notes: Summary of Optative Forms For Common Verbs**εἶμι**

εἶμι in the present optative plural is formed from εἰ + the corresponding imperfect indicative form.

	Present	Future
s. 1.	εἶην	ἔσοίμην
2.	εἶης	ἔσοιο
3.	εἶη	ἔσοιτο
d. 2.	εἶτον/εἶητον	ἔσοισθον
3.	εἶτην/εἶήτην	ἔσοίσθην
p. 1.	εἶμεν/εἶημεν	ἔσοίμεθα
2.	εἶτε/εἶητε	ἔσοισθε
3.	εἶεν/εἶησαν	ἔσοιντο

παύω

	Active Voice	Middle/Passive Voice
Present		
s. 1.	παύοιμι	παυοίμην
2.	παύοις	παύοιο
3.	παύοι	παύοιτο
d. 2.	παύοιτον	παύοισθον
3.	παυοίτην	παυοίσθην
p. 1.	παύοιμεν	παυοίμεθα
2.	παύοιτε	παύοισθε
3.	παύοιεν	παύοιντο
Future		
s. 1.	παύσοιμι	παυσοίμην
2.	παύσοις	παύσοιο
3.	παύσοι	παύσοιτο
d. 2.	παύσοιτον	παύσοισθον
3.	παυσοίτην	παυσοίσθην
p. 1.	παύσοιμεν	παυσοίμεθα
2.	παύσοιτε	παύσοισθε
3.	παύσοιεν	παύσοιντο

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	Active Voice	Middle Voice
1st Aorist		
s. 1.	παύσαιμι	παυσαίμην
2.	παύσαις/παύσειας	παύσαιο
3.	παύσαι/παύσειε	παύσαιτο
d. 2.	παύσαιτον	παύσαισθον
3.	παυσαίτην	παυσαίστην
p. 1.	παύσαιμεν	παυσαίμεθα
2.	παύσαιτε	παύσαισθε
3.	παύσαιεν/παύσειαν	παύσαιντο

φεύγω

	Active Voice	Middle/Passive Voice
Present		
s. 1.	φεύγοιμι	φευγοίμην
2.	φεύγοις	φεύγοιο
3.	φεύγοι	φεύγοιτο
d. 2.	φεύγοιτον	φεύγοισθον
3.	φευγοίτην	φευγοίστην
p. 1.	φεύγοιμεν	φευγοίμεθα
2.	φεύγοιτε	φεύγοισθε
3.	φεύγοιεν	φεύγοιντο
Future		
s. 1.	φεύξοιμι	φευξοίμην
2.	φεύξοις	φεύξοιο
3.	φεύξοι	φεύξοιτο
d. 2.	φεύξοιτον	φεύξοισθον
3.	φευξοίτην	φευξοίστην
p. 1.	φεύξοιμεν	φευξοίμεθα
2.	φεύξοιτε	φεύξοισθε
3.	φεύξοιεν	φεύξοντο

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

2nd Aorist		
s. 1.	φύγοιμι	φυγοίμην
2.	φύγοις	φύγοιο
3.	φυγοι	φύγοιτο
d. 2.	φύγοιτον	φύγοισθον
3.	φυγοίτην	φυγοίσθην
p. 1.	φύγοιμεν	φυγοίμεθα
2.	φύγοιτε	φύγοισθε
3.	φύγοιεν	φύγοιντο

φιλέω

	Active Voice	Middle/Passive Voice
Present		
s. 1.	φιλοῦμι/φιλοίην	φιλοίμην
2.	φιλοῖς/φιλοίης	φιλοῖο
3.	φιλοῦ/φιλοίη	φιλοῖτο
d. 2.	φιλοῖτον/φιλοίητον	φιλοῖσθον
3.	φιλοίτην/φιλοίητην	φιλοίσθην
p. 1.	φιλοῦμεν/φιλοίημεν	φιλοίμεθα
2.	φιλοῖτε/φιλοίητε	φιλοῖσθε
3.	φιλοῖεν/φιλοίησαν	φιλοῖντο

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 201 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. But if he ever promised anything, he was be eager to supply it.
2. If you taught them, they were pleased.
3. And the danger might not prevent them.
4. Consequently²⁹ they desired³⁰ to campaign rather than to be unjust.
5. But it was necessary to supply wine and grain so that they might be nourished while campaigning.
6. This man would supply you, if you should desire anything³¹.
7. Anyone who is just would not love the unjust.
8. For how would you be glad, if we were not planning to do those things which are arranged?

b) Complete:

1. εἰ ὁ σατράπης ἐπιθυμοίη στρατεύεσθαι, τοὺς ἐν τῇ αὐτοῦ χώρα κέλευοι ἂν οἶνον τε καὶ σῖτον πορίσαι.
2. οἱ δὲ ξένοι ἐν πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις ὄντες ἔφευγον ἵνα μὴ ἀλίσκωντο.
3. πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἤλαυνον, εἰ ἀναγκαῖον εἶη πρὸς ὕδωρ ἐλθεῖν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. εἶθε δέξαιτο ἀργύριον τε καὶ χρῦσίον.
2. αὐτοὺς ἐδίδαξεν ὅπως σοφὸς τε γένοιτο καὶ ἄλλους ὠφελήσειαν.
3. εἰ γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν μισθὸν δέξαιντο.
4. εἶθε καλῶς πράττοιεν.
5. οἱ ξένοι ἔφυγον ἵνα μὴ κακῶς πράττοιεν.

Section 202 Peace and War

Peace nourishes the farmer well – even in rocky soil³², but war nourishes him badly, even in a good field³³.

-- Menander, fragment.

²⁹ LS, p. 909, entry for ὥστε, II.2, “at the beginning of a sentence, to mark a strong conclusion, and so, therefore, consequently”.

³⁰ LS, p.292, entry for ἐπιθυμέω, “c. inf. to desire to do”.

³¹ του = τινος.

³² Literally, “in the rocks”.

³³ Literally, “in the plain”.

Lesson XXXIV Conditional Relative Clauses

Section 208 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. If anyone became a friend to Cyrus, he received gifts.
2. Whoever should become unjust, he will not receive gifts.
3. Whoever might become general, I will follow him even to death.
4. For whatever time you journey, this man furnishes a market.
5. And it will be possible for them to go away, whenever they may wish.
6. But when Cyrus died, his friends no longer had hope of safety.
7. I shall bring he who is willing safely to Greece.
8. The horses, whenever anyone might be pursuing, fled.
9. They would not love anyone who does not do honorable deeds.

b) Complete:

1. ἐπεὶ οἱ ξένοι ἡμᾶς ὠφελοῖεν, αὐτοὺς ἔσφζομεν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα³⁴.
2. ὅστις ἂν βούλωμαι στρατεύειν, Κῦρος κελεύσει παρέλναι ὄπλα λαβόντα³⁵.
3. ὅταν τις ἀδικῆ, κακὰ πάσχει³⁶.

c) Write in Greek:

1. εἰ στρατεύσειαν, πέμπων σῖτον τε καὶ τὸν οἶνον τρέφεν³⁷
2. πόσον οἶνον οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἂν παρέχοιεν;
3. εἰ δεήσειε μάξεσθαι, ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτοὺς εἰς μάχην ἂν τάττοι³⁸.
4. εἰ οἱ ἄρχοντες μὴ ἠδίκησαν, οἱ πολῖται οὐκ ἂν κακῶς ἔπραξαν³⁹.

³⁴ past general condition (optative in protasis, imperfect in apodosis). See §547.

³⁵ Future more vivid condition (subjunctive in protasis, future indicative in apodosis). See §547.

³⁶ Present general condition (subjunctive in protasis, present indicative in apodosis). See §547.

³⁷ Past general condition, see XXXIII, § 199 a for translation.

³⁸ Future less vivid condition, see XXXIII, § 199 b.

³⁹ Past contrary to fact condition.

**Section 209 “They That Go Down To The Sea In Ships”:
Fragments from Sophocles and Menander To Illustrate Conditional
Relative Clauses**

“The voyage is always good, whenever you flee evil”⁴⁰.
-- Sophocles, *Philoctetes*, 641.

“If one has a beautiful body and an evil soul,
[that person] has a beautiful ship and an evil pilot”.
-- Menander, fragment.

⁴⁰ Both quotes are examples of a conditional relative clause used in a present general condition (subjunctive in protasis with present indicative in apodosis).

Lesson XXXV *Indirect Discourse*

Study Notes: Summary Of Indirect Discourse

- Verbs that take ὅτι/ὡς+finite form for the quoted statement
 - *Most* verbs of speaking
 - λέγω (active voice)
 - εἶπον
 - ἀποκρίνομαι
 - πυνθάνομαι (can also take participle construction)
 - αἰσθάνομαι (can also take participle construction)
 - ἀκούω (can also take infinitive/participle construction)
 - Note that the common verb φημί ("say") uses the infinitive in the quoted statement. φημί is introduced in Lesson LXI.
 - Subordinate Verb usually has Same Mood and Tense as if quoted directly
 - Optative is optional if main verb is a secondary tense.
- Verbs that take infinitive for the quoted statement
 - φημί
 - λέγεται (passive)
 - νομίζω
 - ἀκούω (can also take ὅτι/ὡς+finite form/participle construction)
- Verbs that (often) take participle (accusative) for the quoted statement
 - Verbs denoting operation of the senses
 - ὀράω
 - ἀγγέλλω
 - αἰσθάνομαι
 - πυνθάνομαι
 - ἀκούω (can also take ὅτι/ὡς+finite form/infinitive construction)
- Indirect Questions
 - A verb that indicates a question will be followed by an interrogative or indirect relative.
 - Verb in the quoted question is a finite form.
 - Verb in quoted question follows same rules as for ὅτι/ὡς+finite form construction.
 - N.B.: Greek usage differs from Latin, which requires a subjunctive verb in the quoted question.
- Tenses in indirect discourse **for infinitive and participle constructions only**
 - Present tense: subordinate action is **contemporaneous** with main verb.
 - Future tense: subordinate action will **follow** main verb.
 - Aorist tense: subordinate action **preceded** main verb.
- For any of these constructions, if ἄν occurs it shows that the original verb had ἄν.

Section 219 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. The messenger said that the river was uncrossable.
2. For he learned that the enemy had destroyed the bridge.
3. I wonder whether you will find that the boats are present.
4. But you will determine that the guards are able to guard the camp.
5. Did you learn if the road will be long?
6. They were saying that these (men) would be sufficient.
7. They announced that the enemy had fled.
8. You will find that this is a bad road.
9. But if I had found that you were so few, I would not have sent you against the village.
10. From Cyrus you heard that the barbarians, with a shout, did battle.
11. But we do not know what⁴¹ plan he is making.
12. But they discover that they are stealing the weapons.

b) Complete:

1. ἐνόμισαν δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας κλέψειν τό τε ἀργύριον καὶ τὸ χρυσίον.
2. εἶπεν ὅτι οἱ στατιῶται ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τὰς σκηναῖς διαρπάσαι.
3. εἰ μὴ ἡ βασιλεία ἦσθετο τοὺς ὀπλίτας ταπτομένους, οὐκ ἂν ἔφυγε.
4. ἐθαύμασαν εἰ οἱ ξένοι Κῦρω ἔψοιντο.

c) Write in Greek:

1. οὐστὶνας φιλοιοεν, οὐκ ἂν ἐθέλοεν κακῶς ποιεῖν⁴².
2. ὅταν οὐκέτι ἔχειν αὐτοὺς δῆ, εἰς Ἑλλάδα ἐθέλοντας πεμψει⁴³.
3. ἐπεὶ ὁ ἄρχων ἀπέθανε, οἱ αὐτῶν ἐτρεψαντο εἰς φυγάδα⁴⁴.
4. ὁ Κῦρος ἀξίος φίλος ἦν ὅττινι(ὄττω) φίλος εἶη⁴⁵.

⁴¹ Indirect question – see CS §217. The paroxytone accent of *τίνα* shows that it is the interrogative form (the indefinite *τινά* is, of course, enclitic).

⁴² Future less vivid with conditional relative clause for the protasis.

⁴³ Future more vivid with conditional relative clause for the protasis.

⁴⁴ See CS §144 a, page 79: “ἐπεὶ and ἐπειδὴ followed by an imperfect or aorist indicative often mean *when* and refer to a definite act or situation in past time...”

⁴⁵ Past general condition (apodosis contains imperfect indicative) with conditional relative.

Section 220 What Fools These Mortals Be!

A cowherd once looked where his cow might be. And he did not find it. Therefore he vowed to sacrifice a calf to the god, if he should find the thief. Coming to a certain forest, he found a lion eating the cow. "O Zeus," he said, "I vowed before to sacrifice a calf, if I found the thief, but now I shall sacrifice a bull, if I may escape the thief!"

-- Adapted from Aesop, 83.

Lesson XXXVI **Review****Section 221** **Assignments**

e)

Word	Mood	Clue
πέμπητε	Subjunctive	η
λέγοι	Optative	ο
ἀκούσωσι	Subjunctive	ω
ἀκούσειε	Optative	ει
ἀρπάσατο	Indicative	α + το
πείθεσθαι	Infinitive	-εσθαι
πείθεται	Subjunctive	η
κελεῦσαι	Infinitive	-εῦσαι
εἶμεν	1 st pers. pl., 2 nd aor. opt. act of ἔημι	εἶ + μ
εἶναι	Infinitive of εἶμι	εἶ + ναι
ᾧμεν	Subjunctive	ᾧ

f)

Present Subjunctive and Optative, Active and Middle Voices, of ποιέω

Present Subjunctive	Active	Middle
s. 1	ποιῶ	ποιῶμαι
2	ποιῆς	ποιέησαι=>ποιῆ
3	ποιῆ	ποινήται
d. 2	ποιῆτον	ποιῆσθον
3	ποιῆτον	ποιῆσθον
p. 1	ποιῶμεν	ποιώμεθα
2	ποιῆτε	ποιῆσθε
3	ποιῶσι	ποιώνται

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Present Optative	Active	Middle
s. 1	ποιοῖμι/ποιοίην	ποιοίμην
2	ποιοῖς/ποιοίης	ποιοῖο
3	ποιοῖ/ποιοίη	παύοιτο
d. 2	ποιοῖτον	ποιοῖσθον
3	ποιοίτην	ποιοίσθην
p. 1	ποιοῖμεν/ποιοίημεν	ποιοίμεθα
2	ποιοῖτε/ποιοίητε	ποιοῖσθε
3	ποιοῖεν/ποιοίησαν	ποιοῖντο

Aorist Optative Active of πράττω

1 st Aorist Optative	Active
s. 1	πράξαμι
2	πράξαις/πράξειας
3	πράξαι/πράξειε
d. 2	πράξαιτον
3	πράξαιτήν
p. 1	πράξαμεν
2	πράξαιτε
3	πράξειαν

Aorist Optative of γίγνομαι

2 nd Aorist Optative	Middle
s. 1	γενοίμην
2	γένοιο
3	γένοιτο
d. 2	γένοισθον
3	γενοίσθην
p. 1	γενοίμεθα
2	γένοισθε
3	γένοιντο

g)

A subjunctive in a main clause indicates exhortation (in 1st person and usually 1st person plural)⁴⁶.

A subjunctive after εἰν indicates the protasis for a present general or future more vivid condition⁴⁷. A subjunctive in a dependent clause after ἵνα, ὡς, or ὅπως indicates purpose⁴⁸.

An optative in a main clause without ἄν indicates a wish referring to the future⁴⁹. As Crosby and Schaeffer note, the optative in a main clause, used with ἄν, “denotes a *future action* that is *qualified* by, or *dependent* upon, some circumstances or condition, whether expressed or implied⁵⁰. This use is called the *potential optative*.

An optative in a subordinate clause after εἰ is the protasis of a future less vivid or past general condition⁵¹. An optative in a subordinate clause after ἵνα or ὡς (or ὅπως) expresses purpose⁵². An optative in a subordinate clause, after ὅτι, would introduce the quoted statement in indirect discourse, where the verb of the main clause is a secondary tense⁵³.

⁴⁶ CS §176a, p. 95.

⁴⁷ CS §183, p. 99.

⁴⁸ CS §176b, p. 95.

⁴⁹ CS §192a, p. 102.

⁵⁰ CS §199b, p. 106.

⁵¹ CS §199a, p. 105.

⁵² CS §192b, p. 102.

⁵³ CS §211, p. 113.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

h)

Present general conditions differ from future more vivid in that the present general condition has a present indicative tense, or its equivalent, in the apodosis, while the future more vivid has a future indicative or its equivalent⁵⁴.

Past general conditions differ from future less vivid in that the past general has an imperfect indicative, or its equivalent, in the apodosis. The future less vivid contains a verb in the optative mood + ἄν⁵⁵.

i)

Interrogative vs. Indefinite Pronouns

Phrase	Interrogative or Indefinite?	Why?
τίνες εἰσίν	Interrogative	Paroxytone accent. The indefinite form is enclitic and would be accented <i>τινές εἰσιν</i>
εἷ τις	Indefinite	εἷ picks up an acute accent when it precedes an enclitic.
τίνι στρατιώτη	Interrogative	Paroxytone accent.
λόγοι τινές	Indefinite	Oxytone accent on 2-syllable enclitic following paroxytone word.
πρᾶγμά τι	Indefinite	Enclitic.
τί πράγμα	Interrogative	Not enclitic.
ἐκ τίνων	Interrogative	Not enclitic.

⁵⁴ CS, §183, p. 99.

⁵⁵ CS, §199a, p. 105.

Section 222 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. ὅστις ἂν γένηται στρατηγός, οἱ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἔψονται.
2. ἐπύνθοντο εἰ ἀναγκαῖον εἶη τοὺς ἀδικήσαντας κακὰ παθεῖν.
3. μὴ οἱ ξένοι κλέπτωσι τὰ χρήματα.
4. ἐθαύμασε πῶς ἂν ποιήσαιτε⁵⁶ πάντας τοὺς πόρους.
5. τοῦ γὰρ ἀγγέλου ἤκουσαν τὴν σωτηρίᾳς ἐλπίδα οὖσαν καλήν.

b) Write in Greek:

1. εἶπον ἡμῖν ὅτι ὑπὸ τῶν φυλάκων ἡ γέφυρα διαβατὸς εἶη.
2. ἐθαύμασα εἰ πεύσοιτο τὸν αὐτοῦ ἀδελφὸν στρατιᾶν τρέφοντα.
3. ὅστις ἂν μέλλῃ⁵⁷ ἀλώσεται.
4. εἶθε οἱ ξένοι λαμβάνοιεν τὸν μισθόν.
5. τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἔταξε τῆς νυκτὸς ἵνα πρὸς τὴν κόμην σπεύσειε.

⁵⁶ This sentence would be translated “he marvelled how you inflicted (ποιήσαιτο) all the sufferings”.

⁵⁷ CS §206. ὅστις ἂν is equivalent to ἐάν in this future more vivid construction using a conditional relative clause.

Lesson XXXVII Reading

Section 224 The Delphic Oracle

There was a certain Xenophon in the army, an Athenian, who was accompanying the army, though he was neither a general nor a captain nor a soldier. But Proxenos, who was an old guest-friend, had summoned him. He promised him, if he should come, to make him a friend of Cyrus, about whom Proxenos said that he thought him to be worthy of not a little. However, when Xenophon had read the letter he consulted Socrates the Athenian about the journey. Now, Socrates suspected that the Athenians would be angry, if Xenophon should become a friend to Cyrus, because Cyrus thought it best to make war eagerly, in alliance with the Lacedaemonians, against Athens. Socrates advised Xenophon to go to Delphi and to consult with the god concerning the trip.

When he arrived Xenophon asked Apollo to which god he should be sacrificing and praying, [that] having done well, he might return to Greece. And Apollo told him the gods to whom it was best to pray. When he returned he told Socrates all these things. Socrates, having heard [Xenophon's account], was not pleased because he did not first inquire whether it was best to travel or to remain, but Xenophon, who had [already] decided it was best to travel, had [simply] inquired how he might do this well. "Since, however, you asked this in this way," he [Socrates] said, "it is best to do whatever the god has ordered."

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 3.1.4-7.

Lesson XXXVIII
Liquid (λ,μ,ν,ρ)

Consonant Declension – Stems Ending in a

Study Notes: Review of Consonant Declension

- Case endings in this declension *contain only short vowels except for -ων in the genitive plural*.
- Nouns with monosyllabic nominative singular are accented on the ultima for the **genitive and dative** in all numbers (e.g., ἡ νύξ, τῆς νυκτός, τῇ νυκτί, τὴν νύκτα, αἱ νύκτες, τῶν νυκτῶν, ταῖς νυξί, τᾶς νύκτας).
- Except for nouns with monosyllabic nominative singulars, and a few exceptions, the accent for nouns of the consonant declension is persistent. As a result, the genitive plural of the feminine in the consonant declension does not automatically receive a circumflex accent on the ultima. This is a key difference between the consonant declension and the genitive plural of the **-α** declension.
 - There are special cases, due to exceptions or due to the monosyllabic nominative singular rule, where the feminine genitive plural is accented.
 - e.g., νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ has genitive plural νυκτῶν; due to the monosyllabic nominative singular forcing the accent of the genitive and dative to fall on the ultima.
 - e.g., ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ, with genitive plural νεῶν. The declension of this word is highly irregular.

Study Notes: Summary of Typical Declensions for Consonant Declension Nouns

Sample Declension of κ-, γ-, χ- Stems (See Crosby & Schaeffer, §101)

ἡ μικρὰ σάλπιγξ	αἱ μικραὶ σάλπιγγες
τῆς μικρᾶς σάλπιγγος	τῶν μικρῶν σαλπίγγων
τῇ μικρᾷ σάλπιγγι	ταῖς μικραῖς σάλπιγγι ⁵⁸ (ν)
τὴν μικρὰν σάλπιγγα	τᾶς μικρᾶς σάλπιγγας

ὁ κακὸς Θραξ	οἱ κακοὶ Θραῖκες
τοῦ κακοῦ Θρακός	τῶν κακῶν Θρακῶν
τῷ κακῷ Θρακί	τοῖς κακοῖς Θραξί ⁵⁹ (ν)
τὸν κακὸν Θρακα	τοὺς κακοὺς Θρακας

Sample Declension of δ- or τ- Stems (See Crosby & Schaeffer, §107)

ἡ ἀγαθὴ χάρις	αἱ ἀγαθαὶ χάριτες
τῆς ἀγαθῆς χάριτος	τῶν ἀγαθῶν χαρίτων
τῇ ἀγαθῇ χάριτι	τοῖς ἀγαθαῖς χάρισι ⁶⁰ (ν)
τὴν ἀγαθὴν χάριν ⁶¹	τᾶς ἀγαθᾶς χάριτας

ἡ λευκὴ ἀσπίς	αἱ λευκαὶ ἀσπίδες
τῆς λευκῆς ἀσπίδος	τῶν λευκῶν ἀσπίδων
τῇ λευκῇ ἀσπίδι	τοῖς λευκοῖς ἀσπίσι ⁶² (ν)
τὴν λευκὴν ἀσπίδα	τᾶς λευκᾶς ἀσπίδας

⁵⁸ σάλπιγγ+σι = σάλπιγγι.

⁵⁹ Θρακ+σι = Θραξί, note that accent is oxytone due to the monosyllabic nominative singular rule.

⁶⁰ χάριτ+σι = χάρισι

⁶¹ χάριν is irregular.

⁶² ἀσπίδ+σι = ἀσπίσι.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Sample Declension of Liquid Stems (λ-, μ-, ν-, ρ-) (See Crosby & Schaeffer, §226)

ὁ ἄγών	οἱ ἄγῶνες
τοῦ ἄγῶνος	τῶν ἄγῶνων
τῷ ἄγῶνι	τοῖς ἄγῶσι (ν)
τὸν ἄγῶνα	τούς ἄγῶνας

ὁ ἡγεμών	οἱ ἡγεμόνες
τοῦ ἡγεμόνος	τῶν ἡγεμόνων
τῷ ἡγεμόνι	τοῖς ἡγεμόσι (ν)
τὸν ἡγεμόνα	τούς ἡγεμόνας

ὁ Ἕλληγ	οἱ Ἕλληγες
τοῦ Ἕλληγος	τῶν Ἕλληγῶν
τῷ Ἕλληγι	τοῖς Ἕλληγσι (ν)
τὸν Ἕλληγα	τούς Ἕλληγας

ὁ ῥήτωρ	οἱ ῥήτορες
τοῦ ῥήτορος	τῶν ῥητόρων
τῷ ῥήτορι	τοῖς ῥήτορσι (ν)
τὸν ῥήτορα	τούς ῥήτορας

Study Notes: Two-ending Adjectives in -ων/-ον

- The forms of these adjectives follow ἡγεμών.
- Masculine and feminine have identical forms.
- Neuter is declined like masculine except in the nominative and accusative singular and plural.
- **The accent is recessive!** Note the recessive accent on the Masculine/Feminine genitive plural.

Masc and Fem	Neuter	Masc and Fem	Neuter
εὐδαίμων	εὐδαιμον	εὐδαίμονες	εὐδαίμονα
εὐδαίμονος	εὐδαίμονος	εὐδαιμόνων	εὐδαιμόνων
εὐδαίμονι	εὐδαίμονι	εὐδαίμοσι (ν)	εὐδαίμοσι (ν)
εὐδαίμονα	εὐδαιμον	εὐδαίμονας	εὐδαίμονα

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 230 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Thereupon, indeed, the Greeks were holding [lit. "were making"] a second game to the god.
2. So, therefore, the fatherland became fortunate.
3. In that month the orators advised the citizens to do the following things.
4. Thus, then, throughout these months the Greek army was supported by Cyrus.
5. When he ordered them not to fear⁶³, they asked for another leader.
6. He might do well for those who have been helpful.
7. Having believed the Greeks, they went upon the journey.
8. Somewhere everything is well for the fortunate.
9. Not even on the third day did they find the wagons near the bridge.

b) Complete:

1. τῇ δευτέρῃ νυκτὶ οἱ Ἕλληνας ἐδέξαντο σῖτον.
2. ὄντινα ἂν ἔλοισθε ἀνάγκη ἔσται ἔπεισθαι.
3. τὸν πάντα μῆνα ἡ Ἑλληνικὴ στρατιὰ ἐπορεύετο ἀνὰ χώρῶν χαλεπῶν.
4. οἱ ἡγεμόνες αὐτοὺς ἄξουσιν ἐπὶ τὰς ἡμέρας εἰς τὴν πατρίδα.

Section 231 On Mars' Hill Acts XVII. 22-25.

Paul, standing in the middle of the Hill of Ares⁶⁴ said: "Men of Athens, I perceive that, in every way, you are god-fearing. Going through and gazing on your shrines I even found an altar on which had been inscribed "TO THE UNKOWN GODS". Accordingly, that which you worship, though ignorant of it, I will proclaim to you. The God who has made the universe and all that is in it, He, being Lord of heaven and of earth, dwells not in temples made by hands nor is He served by human hands."

⁶³ δεῖσαι is 1st aor. inf. act. of δέισμαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα.

⁶⁴ The "Areopagos".

Lesson XXXIX**Consonant Declension – Continued****Study Notes: Declension of Neuters with Stems in -εσ**

τὸ γένος			
τὸ γένος		τὰ γένη	
τοῦ γένους		τῶν γενέων/γενῶν	
τῷ γένει		τοῖς γένεσι (ν)	
τὸ γένος		τὰ γένη	
ἡ τριήρης			
ἡ τριήρης		αἱ τριήρεις	
τῆς τριήρους		τῶν τριήρων [note irregular accent]	
τῇ τριήρει		τοῖς τριήρεσι (ν)	
τὴν τριήρη		τὰς τριήρεις	
τὸ ὄρος			
τὸ ὄρος		τὰ ὄρη	
τοῦ ὄρους		τῶν ὀρέων/ὀρῶν	
τῷ ὄρει		τοῖς ὄρεσι (ν)	
τὸ ὄρος		τὰ ὄρη	
Declension of ἀληθής, ἀληθές			
Singular		Plural	
M/F		N	
ἀληθής	ἀληθές	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ
ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν
ἀληθει	ἀληθει	ἀληθέσι (ν)	ἀληθέσι (ν)
ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 238 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Cyrus sent some part of his soldiers with the triremes.
2. Travelling through the mountains they arrived in a plain full of trees.
3. For we wonder whether the messenger spoke the truth.
4. The river is uncrossable because of [its] width.
5. This family was fighting with the multitude.
6. In what way⁶⁵ did they flee from the walls?
7. Though Socrates' house was small, his friends were sure.
8. Themistocles was from this tribe.
9. When they arrived at that river they made treaties with each other.

b) Complete:

1. ἀεὶ γάρ οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο.
2. εἰ αἰτοῖεν τριήρεις, τὸ τεῖχος οὐκ ἂν εἴη ἀσφαλές.
3. Σωκράτει οἱ παῖδες εἶποντο ὅπου ἔλθοι.

c) Write in Greek:

1. καὶ τῇ δευτέρῃ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἡγέμονα οὐδένα οὐκ εἶλοντο.
2. ὁ ῥήτωρ ἡγγεῖλε πάντα εὖ γιγνόμενα.
3. ἐκείνῃ τῇ νυκτὶ ἄλλοι ἀγῶνες ἐγένοντο.
4. ἐκείνου τοῦ μηνὸς οἱ Ἑλληνικοὶ στρατιῶται τὸν μισθὸν ἤτουν.
5. δέκα μηνῶν ἀφικνοῖντο τὸν πατρίδα.

Section 239 A Practical Politician

And, indeed, Themistocles fitted in with the multitude: on the one hand, speaking the name of each, on the other [δὲ] presenting himself as a sure judge of contracts. As a result, he once said to Simonides the Cean, when he [Simonides] requested something excessive while Themistocles was in command, that Simonides [lit., “ἐκεῖνος”, “the latter”] had not become a fine poet by singing contrary to the song, nor would he himself become a fine archon by doing favors contrary to law.

-- Adapted from Plutarch, *Themistocles*, 5.4.

⁶⁵ τίνι τρόπῳ: Dative of manner (CS §44) = “How”.

Lesson XL Adjectives Of Consonant And A-Declensions Combined. Irregular Adjectives

Study Notes: Declensions of Adjectives in this Chapter

Singular			Plural		
M/F			N		
ταχύς	ταχεία	ταχύ	ταχείς	ταχείαι	ταχέα
ταχέος	ταχείας	ταχέος	ταχέων	ταχειῶν	ταχέων
ταχεῖ	ταχεία	ταχεῖ	ταχέσι (ν)	ταχείαις	ταχέσι (ν)
ταχύν	ταχείαν	ταχύ	ταχείς	ταχείας	ταχέα
πολύς	πολλή	πολύ	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
πολλῶ	πολλῆ	πολλῶ	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
μεγάλω	μεγάλη	μεγάλω	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 248 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Besides, the beginning is hard, but the end is sweet.
2. Thereupon [ἐνταῦθα], indeed, I would have gladly asked him for many things.
3. And before the battle they arrived at Cyrus' camp in swift triremes.
4. On the third day all fled, except those in the market.
5. They will pursue the barbarians beyond the mountains.
6. It is necessary to endure [ἔχειν] many dangers on behalf of the fatherland.
7. Finally, then [τέλος δέ], on reaching the uncrossable river, we halted.
8. In this contest the majority immediately chose the rhetor as leader.

b) Complete:

1. πρὸ δὲ τούτων τῶν ὁρῶν ἦν μέγα πεδῖον, ἐν ᾧ ἔμενε πολλὰς ἡμέρας.
2. ἀλλ' ἡ εὐθεία ὁδὸς οὐκ ἄγει πρὸς σωτηρίαν.
3. καὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἐθαυμάζομεν εἰ οἱ Ἕλληνες αὐτὸν ἡγεμόνα ποιήσειαν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐπὶ τῷ ὄρει ἐμάχονται.
2. οἱ λόχοι εἰς τὸ τεῖχος οὐκ ἀφίξονται εἰ σιγῇ μὴ πορεύονται⁶⁶.
3. τῶν τριήρων ἀσφαλῶν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἠΰξαντο θῦειν πᾶσι τοῖς θεοῖς.
4. οἱ πολλοὶ οὐκ ἠθέλησαν αὐτῷ ἐσπέσθαι.
5. ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἕκαστος ἐδέξατο τὸ ἑαυτοῦ⁶⁷ μέρος.

⁶⁶ The translation given uses a "Future more vivid" condition. If a "Future less vivid" is preferred, the translation would be οἱ λόχοι εἰς τὸ τεῖχος οὐκ ἂν ἀφικνοῦντο εἰ σιγῇ μὴ πορεύουιντο.

⁶⁷ ἑαυτοῦ might be omitted.

Section 250 Eros Wins

I wish to tell about the sons of Atreus⁶⁸,
 I desire to sing about Cadmus⁶⁹,
 But the lyre with its strings
 sings only about Eros.
 I changed⁷⁰ the strings recently,
 and the entire lyre⁷¹,
 But when I would have sung about the
 labors of Heracles,
 the lyre sounded loves⁷² in reply.
 For the future, farewell⁷³ with our blessing⁷⁴, heroes,
 For the lyre sings about loves alone.
 -- Anacreontic.

⁶⁸ Agamemnon and Menelaus. Agamemnon was king of Argos or Mycenae; Menelaus, the younger brother, was husband of Helen "of Troy". See esp. the *Iliad*. From the *OCD*, 2nd edition.

⁶⁹ Son of Agenor, who was king of Tyre. Traditionally considered the founder of Thebes. He is considered to be the builder of the fortress in Thebes' center, called the *Cadmea*. From the *OCD*, 2nd edition.

⁷⁰ ἤμειψα is 1st aor. act. ind., 1st pers. sing. of ἀμείβω.

⁷¹ ἅπᾱς, ἅπᾱσαν, ἅπαν means "the whole", "the entire" in the singular and "all together" in the plural. From *LS*.

⁷² ἔρωτας is accusative plural of ἔρως, ἔρωτος, ὁ.

⁷³ χαίρουτε is pres. act. opt., 2nd pers. pl. of χαίρω.

⁷⁴ Translation is based on *LS* entry for χαίρω, page 878, definition IV.3, "σὺ δέ μοι χαίρων ἀφίκοιο".

Lesson XLI Regular Comparison of Adjectives

Study Notes: Summary of Comparison of Adjectives

- The comparative is typically formed by adding *-τερος, -τερᾶ, -τερον* to the masculine stem of the adjective itself (the “positive” degree, as opposed to the “comparative” or “superlative” degree of the adjective).
- The superlative is formed by adding *-τατος, -τατη, -τατον* to the stem of the masculine form in the positive degree.
- Lengthening:
 - For adjectives that end in *-ος*. The *-ο* of the stem is lengthened to *-ω* if
 - The penult contains a short vowel AND
 - This short vowel is not followed by
 - 2 consonants OR
 - A double consonant.
 - Examples
 - Positive: *φίλιος, -ᾶ, -ον* (“friendly”).
 - Penultimate syllable contains *ι* (short), and is not followed by two consonants or a double consonant.
 - Comparative is *φιλιώτερος, -ᾶ, -ον* (“friendlier”).
 - Superlative is *φιλιώτατος, -η, -ον* (“friendliest”, “most friendly”).
 - Positive: *ἐλεύθερος, -ᾶ, -ον* (“free”).
 - Penultimate syllable is “θε”. It is not followed by either two consonants nor a double consonant.
 - Comparative is *ἐλευθερώτερος, -ᾶ, -ον* (“more free”).
 - Superlative is *ἐλευθερώτατος, -ᾶ, -ον* (“most free”).
 - Positive: *ἀληθής, ἀληθές* (“true”):
 - Stem of the positive is *ἀληθεσ*.
 - Penult contains a long vowel “η”.
 - Comparative is *ἀληθέστερος, -ᾶ, -ον*.
 - Superlative is *ἀληθέστατος, -η, -ον*.
 - Positive: *δίκαιος, -ᾶ, -ον*.
 - Stem of penult is *-αι*, which is considered a long syllable.
 - Comparative is *δικαιότερος, -ᾶ, -ον*.
 - Superlative is *δικαιότατος, -η, -ον*.

- Most adjectives that end in *-us* or *-pos*
 - form the comparative by adding *-ίων* or *-ιον* to the stem of the positive.
Note the long *ι*.
 - form the superlative by adding *-ιστος*, *-ιστη*, *-ιστον* to the stem of the positive
 - Examples:
 - *εὐθύς*:
 - Stem of the positive is *εὐθ-*.
 - Comparative is *εὐθίων*, *εὐθιον*.
 - Superlative is *εὐθιστος*, *-η*, *-ον*.
- The accent of comparatives and superlatives is recessive, not persistent as it is for the positive degree.

Section 256 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. This is the worst, that you became responsible for the flight⁷⁵.
2. He promised them much gold so that, as a result, they were as eager as possible.
3. Whenever we travel down from the mountains we suffer the most terrible things.
4. But now those who were helpless before the battle have become as frightful as possible to the enemy.
5. With the swiftest triremes it will be possible to pursue and to seize the shameful ones.
6. He thinks that the Greeks are more faithful than the barbarians.
7. Socrates loved justice more than safety.
8. The rivers will be impassable for us, if they should destroy the bridges.

b) Complete:

1. αἱ τριήρεις θάττους ἦσαν τῶν πλοίων.
2. τῶν δ' οὖν Ἑλλήνων Κῦρος ἐπεμελεῖτο μάλλον ἢ τῶν βαρβάρων.
3. ἀλλ' ὀλίγοι ἄνθρωποι εἰσιν ὅτι εὐδαιμονέστατοι.
4. οἱ γὰρ πολλοὶ φοβερώτατοι γίνονται ἐπ' ἅν σίτου ἢ ἀπορίᾳ.

c) Write in Greek:

1. δεῖ μέγαν κίνδυνον πάθειν ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος⁷⁶.
2. ὄντινα ἂν οἱ πολλοὶ ἠγέμενα αἰρῶνται, ἠδέως ἐψόμεθα⁷⁷.
3. εἰ αἱ τριήρεις μὴ ταχεῖαι ἦσαν, ὁ στρατηγὸς ἂν ὀλίγους ἔσωσε.
4. τὸ τοῦ τείχους εὖρος ἦν μέγα.
5. πολλὰ τοὺς φίλους ἡμῶν ἂν αἰτοῦμεν.

⁷⁵ See §94 for translation of ἔστιν.

⁷⁶ Οἱ δεῖ μέγαν κίνδυνον ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος κινδυνεύσαι.

⁷⁷ The translation shown is "Future more vivid". If "Future less vivid" is preferred: ὄντινα οἱ πολλοὶ ἠγέμενα αἰροῖντο, ἠδέως ἂν ἔποιντο.

Section 257 Wisest of All

Wise was Sophocles, wiser was Euripides,
but the wisest of all men was Socrates.

-- Ancient oracle, quoted by Suidas under σοφός.

Section 258 Aristotle on Friendship⁷⁸

Being asked what is a friend, he said, "One mind, dwelling in two bodies".

To whom there are friends, there is no friend.⁷⁹

Being asked how we might behave to friends, he said, 'How we might ask them to behave to us.'

-- Diogenes Laertius, 5.21.

⁷⁸ These sayings of Aristotle were quoted by Diogenes Laertius in *The Lives and Opinions of Eminent Philosophers*.

⁷⁹ Favorinus, in the second book of his Commentaries, says that he was constantly repeating, "The man who has friends has no friend." From *The Lives and Opinions of Eminent Philosophers*, by Diogenes Laertius, trans., C.D. Yonge, <http://classicpersuasion.org/pw/diogenes/dlaristotle.htm>, 8/21/05.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

Lesson XLII Irregular Comparison

Study Notes: Comparison of Adjectives

- Comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives like “good”, “big”, “small”, “bad”, “beautiful” are irregular in Indo-European languages, and Ancient Greek is no exception.
- Note that many common adjectives with general meanings in the positive have variations to denote specific meanings in the comparative and superlative. For example, from the positive *ἀγαθός*:
 - ἀγαθός, ἀμείνων/ἄμεινον, ἄριστος*: good/brave, better/braver, best/bravest.
 - ἀγαθός, βελτίων/βέλτιον, βέλτιστος*: morally good, morally better, morally best.
 - ἀγαθός, κρείττων/κρείττον, κράτιστος*: physically good or strong, physically better or stronger, physically best or strongest.
- Similarly, *κακός*, the positive degree of “bad”, maps to several specific kinds of “badness” in the comparative and positive:
 - κακός, κακίων/κάκιον, κάκιστος*: bad, worse, worst.
 - κακός, χείρων/χείρον, χείριστος*: low class, lower class (“meaner” in social degree), lowest class.
 - κακός, ἥττων/ἥττον, ἥκιστα* [adverb]: weak/inferior, weaker, least/by no means.
- Finally, *μικρός*:
 - μικρός, μικρότερος, μικρότατος*: small, smaller, smallest.
 - μικρός, μείων, --* : small in number, less in number.
 - μικρός/ὀλίγος, ἐλάττων/ἔλαττον, ἐλάχιστος*: few in number, fewer in number, fewest in number.

Study Notes: Declension of *ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον*

Singular		Plural	
M/F		N	
<i>ἀμείνων</i> ⁸⁰	<i>ἄμεινον</i>	<i>ἀμείνονες/ἀμείνους</i>	<i>ἀμείνονα/ἀμείνω</i>
<i>ἀμείνονος</i>	<i>ἀμείνονος</i>	<i>ἀμεινόνων</i>	<i>ἀνεινόνων</i>
<i>ἀμείνονι</i>	<i>ἀμείνονι</i>	<i>ἀμείνοσι (ν)</i>	<i>ἀμείνοσι (ν)</i>
<i>ἀμείνονα/ἀμείνω</i>	<i>ἄμεινον</i>	<i>ἀμείνονας/ἀμείνους</i>	<i>ἀμείνονα/ἀμείνω</i>

⁸⁰ The declension of the common word *ἀμείνων* is not provided in CS. Surprisingly, it is not given in Smyth, either. The declension shown is constructed from the entry for *ἀμείνων* in LSJ, p. 80.

Section 262 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. To speak the best and to do the best is [the characteristic of] the good citizen.
2. It is not the smallest part of wisdom to know yourself.
3. They therefore supplied more than a little grain.
4. However, he made these marches much longer.
5. In eight days the former wife of Cyrus came.
6. He thought that the Greeks were braver than than many barbarians.
7. What is more noble than to die on behalf of one's country? [lit., "on behalf of the fatherland"]
8. But he marched with a bigger army than as if [he were marching] against those [people].
9. He ordered the generals, once they had taken as many provisions as possible, to be present.
10. Some horses are smaller, others are stronger.

b) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ Ἕλληνες πιστότεροι ἦσαν.
2. εἴαν αἱ γυναικὲς ἀφίκωνται τὸ τεῖχος, ἀσφαλέσταται γενήσονται [οἱ ἔσονται].
3. οἱ ῥήτορες δεινότεροι ἐγένοντο τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν.
4. οἱ βάρβαροι ὡς φοβερώτατοι ἦσαν.
5. τὴν διὰ τὰ ὄρη ὁδὸν ἠῦρον ἀπορωτέρῃαν ἢ τὴν κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν.

Section 263 Esse Quam Videri⁸¹

"For he wished not to appear the best, but to be [the best]."

-- Aeschylus, *Seven Against Thebes*, 592.

⁸¹ The Latin phrase "esse quam videri" ["to be, rather than to seem"] is used by Sallust in reference to Julius Caesar. Sallust appears to have been paraphrasing Aeschylus. This Latin phrase is also the motto of the State of North Carolina.

Section 264 Excerpt from Euripides' *Suppliants*

For someone said that, in mortals, there are more of the meaner things than the better⁸².
But I hold an opposing opinion to this, that
There are more good things than evil in mortals.⁸³
-- Euripides, *Suppliants*, 196-199.

Section 265 ΓΝΟΜΑΙ ΜΕΝΑΝΔΡΟΥ⁸⁴

“For is not Eros the greatest of the gods and, to be sure, by far [πολύ] the most precious of all?”

“Of good things, intelligence is worth the most to all people, if it be skilled in the [morally] best things.”

“It is preferable to have little money honestly [and] openly than much [money], which it is necessary to take with reproach.”

“It is always strongest to speak the truth.”

Section 266 Right is Might

“It is preferable to fight with a few good people against all the evil ones, than [to fight] with many evil people against the few good ones.”
-- Antisthenes, quoted by Diogenes Laertius, 6.12.

⁸² “ὡς τὰ χείρονα...” is, literally, “that the meaner things are more than the better things in mortals”.

⁸³ Theseus is speaking these lines.

⁸⁴ “Menander’s Sayings”.

Lesson XLIII Formation and Comparison Of Adverbs

Study Notes: Table of Comparison for Adjectives/Adverbs

Adjective	Positive Degree Adv.	Comparative Degree Adv.	Superlative Degree Adv.
ἄξιος	ἀξίως	ἀξιώτερον	ἀξιώτατα
μέγας	μεγάλως	μείον	μέγιστα
ἀληθής	ἀληθῶς	ἀληθέστερον	ἀληθέστατα
ταχύς	ταχῶς	θᾶττω	τάχιστα
κακός	κακῶς	κακίω	κάκιστα
δεινός	δεινῶς	δεινώτερον	δεινώτατα

Section 272 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. When they came nearer, they pursued the enemy much more swiftly.
2. Finally, I would praise these as gladly as possible.
3. Now if we fare well, we will have much more power.
4. But you, though you had justly been treated well by him, would flee this way⁸⁵.
5. But if you should praise him as much as possible, he would not yet think you [his] friends.
6. With him leading, it will be easier to travel completely safely.
7. However, he held the army near the river, so that the enemy would not get behind⁸⁶.
8. Therefore, having conquered much, they journeyed more eagerly than before [τὸ πρόσθεν].
9. And this was not least responsible for the flight.
10. These men, having thrown their weapons, fled at full speed out of the van.

⁸⁵ Literally, "in respect to this flight".

⁸⁶ That is, he was using the river to protect the army's rear from the enemy so that he could not be encircled.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ὡς πλείστοι παρέσσονται.
2. οὗτοί εἰσιν κακίους πολλῶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
3. ὁ δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀδελφὸς οὐχ ὑπώπτειε Κῦρον ἀθροίζειν ὡς ἀρίστους.
4. οἱ ξένοι ἀφίκοντο ὑστερώτερον μικρῶ τῶν ἡμῶν.
5. ἡμῖν δεῖ ἔχειν ταχίστασ τριήρεις.

Section 273 A Superlative Character

Cyrus, therefore, who was the most kingly and most worthy to rule of the Persians who came after the original Cyrus [Cyrus the Great], died thus. For first, when still a boy, when he was being educated both with his brother and with the other boys, he was considered the best of all in all things. For all the sons of the noblest Persians are educated at the royal court. There Cyrus was, first, considered of all the boys to be the most respectful. Second, [he was considered to be] the most fond of horses and to drive horses the best. They thought him to be the most interested in the works of war.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.9.1-6.

Lesson XLIV Consonant Declension

Section 278 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. But it is not possible to assist the friends.
2. Many of the horsemen were astounded, so that [with the result that] they were running at full speed.
3. The inland march was against the Great King of Persia.
4. The ships, therefore, of the Great King of Persia have not yet come.
5. And the barbarians, whenever they go into battle, will run [into battle] with a shout.
6. We will strike all who have rushed into the ship.
7. And very gladly the rhetor began his speech.
8. If Cyrus had not died on the inland march, would he have become king?
9. Where in the city were you when you heard the trumpet?
10. Was he king for a long time or not?
11. The mouth of this river was very narrow, so as to be impassable for ships.
12. To the brother – him being king -- many from the cities came in order to be supplicants⁸⁷.

b) Write in Greek:

1. τί αἱ τριήρεις θαττίω οὐκ ἔφυγον;
2. χαλεπωτάτην μάχην ἐμάχησαντο.
3. κινδύνου παρόντος τὴν ταχίστην ἐπορευσάμεθα.
4. ὁ λοχᾶγός τὸν λόχον ὡς ἄριστα ἔταξε.
5. ἐγγυτέρω ἦσαν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ πρὶν ἦσθοντο τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκέτι ὀπισθεν ὄντας.

⁸⁷ ὡς βοηθήσοντες: Future participle of purpose.

Section 279 A Headstrong Youth

While still a boy, Alcibiades was playing with dice in a narrow street. The throw came down to him⁸⁸ as a cart drove through [the same area]. At first then he [Alcibiades] ordered the man driving the cart to halt. For the throw was falling in the path of the wagon. [Since] the latter [the wagoneer] was not obeying, but [kept] driving onwards, the other boys fled, but Alcibiades, falling on his face in front of the horse, ordered [the driver], if he wished, to drive on through. The result was that the man, who had become afraid, backed up his horse. Those who were present at this event were astounded and ran with a shout to help Alcibiades.

-- Adapted from Plutarch, *Alcibiades*, 2.

⁸⁸ τῆς δὲ βολῆς καθηκούσης εἰς αὐτόν.

Lesson XLV Declension

Syncopated Nouns Of The Consonant

Study Notes: Declension of κέρας, κέρᾱτος/κέρως, τό

Declension of κέρας, κέρᾱτος/κέρως τό (From Note 1, p. 150 and §509 e)

Case	Sing.	Alt. Singular	Plural	Alt. Plural
Nom.	κέρας		κέρᾱτα	κέρᾱ (from κέρᾱσα)
Gen.	κέρᾱτος	κέρως (from κέρασος)	κεράτων	κερών (from κεράσων)
Dat.	κέρᾱτι	κέραι (from κέρασι)	κέρᾱσι (ν)	
Acc.	κέρας		κέρᾱτα	κέρᾱ

Section 284 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Their mother loved Cyrus more than Artaxerxes, who was king.
2. Thus my army was being supported.
3. He loved the old man strongly, since he was his father.
4. We shall consult with this man, as soon as we arrive in my country.
5. He took care of his father in the noblest way.
6. And then our fathers, because they were good men, rescued Greece on our behalf⁸⁹.
7. Clearchus will be leader of the right wing [of the army].
8. Since it was becoming night they ran towards the fire.
9. We have stronger bodies than yours.
10. If they had not seized both your and our weapons, we would have pursued them.
11. All, and not least the King himself, found that at Thermopylae there were many Median persons, but few [real] men.

⁸⁹ ἡμῶν.

b) Write in Greek:

1. τοῦ ἐμοῦ λόγου τὰδε ἦρχον. [partitive genitive]
2. ποῦ τῆς πόλεως ἦσαν οἱ ἱππεῖς;
3. τῆς κραυγῆς ἠκούσαμεν ἐπεὶ ὁ ἱππεὺς κατὰ τοῦ ἵππου ἔπεσε.
4. τῷ βασιλεῖ βοηθήσουσι χρήμασι, ἀλλ' οὐκ ναυσί.
5. τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν πόλεων τινες ἀλλήλοις πολὺ ἐμάχοντο.

Section 285 A Fearless Statesman

For if anyone should ask you “Do you make peace, O men of Athens?” “No, by Zeus,” you would reply, “but we make war on Philip!” But did you not elect from yourselves 10 division leaders, and generals, and tribe-leaders, and two leaders of cavalry? What, then, are they doing? Except for one man, whom you may marshal for war, the rest are marshalling⁹⁰ processions for you with the sacrifice-makers. Just like those who mold [soldiers]⁹¹ of clay, you select your division-leaders and tribe-leaders for the market, not for war.

⁹⁰ For this translation, see *Demosthenes: Philippics I, II, III with Introduction and Notes*. Gilbert A. Davies, M.A. (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1949).

⁹¹ Ibid.

Lesson XLVI **Review****Section 287** **Assignments**

f)

ταχεῖα τριήρη	μεγάλη τριήρη	πολλήν ναῦν	πλείονα/πλείω ναῦν
ταχέων ἀγώνων	μεγάλων ἀγώνων	πολλοὶ λόχοι	πλείονες/πλείους λόχοι
ταχεῖαι νῆες	μεγάλαι νῆες	πολλοῖς ἡγεμόσι	πλείοσιν ἡγεμόσι
ταχὺ γένος	μέγα γένος	πολλὰ ὄρη	πλείονα/πλείω ὄρη

g)

	Accusative Singular	Dative Plural
Ἕλληνα	Ἕλληνα	Ἕλλησι (ν)
μέρος	μέρος	μέρσι (ν)
ἀνὴρ	ἄνδρα	ἀνδράσι (ν)
πατήρ	πατέρα	πατράσι (ν)
πόλις	πόλιν	πόλεσι (ν)

	Dative Singular	Accusative Plural
μήτηρ	μητρί	μητέρας
χείρ	χειρί	χεῖρας
εὖρος	εὖρει	εὖρη
βασιλεύς	βασιλεῖ	βασιλέας
ἡγεμών	ἡγεμόνι	ἡγεμόνας

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

h)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	μείζων, μείζον	μέγιστος, -η, -ον
ἀληθής, ἀληθές	ἀληθέστερος, -ᾱ, -ον	ἀληθέστατος, -η, -ον
εὐδαίμων, εὐδαιμον	εὐδαιμονέστερας, -ᾱ, -ον	εὐδαιμονέστατος, -η, -ον
κακός	κακίων, κάκιον	κάκιστος, -η, -ον
	χείρων, χείρον (meaner)	χείριστος, -η, -ον
	ἥττων, ἥττον (weaker)	no adj. form. ἥκιστα is an adv. that means "least", "by no means".
αἰσχρός	αἰσχίων, αἰσχίον	αἰχιστος, -η, -ον
ἡδέως (adv.)	ἡδίον	ἡδιστα
εὖ (adv.)	ἄμεινον	ἄριστα
μάλα (adv.)	μᾶλλον	μάλιστα

Section 288 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ἀνὰ κράτος ἀπήλθον οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
2. ἥττων ἐγένετο ὁ παῖς τοῦ πατρός.
3. πολλῶν θάπτους εἰσὶν αἱ τριήρεις ἢ τὰ πλοῖα. [see §254 for case of τὰ πλοῖα]
4. Κύρος ἀξιότατος ἦν βασιλεύειν.
5. τὸν ἄνδρα ἐποίησαν ἡγεμόνα τοῦ κέρως. [or κερᾶτος]
6. ὡς τάχιστα πάντες πλὴν τοῦ γέροντος εἰσέπεσον εἰς τὴν ναῦν.
7. ταύτη τῇ νυκτί ἢ στενὴ ὁδὸς ἦν ἄπορος.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ὡς πλείστοι τῶν ἀρχόντων ταῖς ναυσὶν ἔρξονται.
2. ὁ [σὸς] πατήρ τοῦτο ἐπύθετο ὕστερον πολλαῖς ἡμέραις ἢ σύ.
3. ἡγγειλε ἐκείνη ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τὸ πῦρ γιγνόμενον δεινόν.
4. τῶν ἐπὶ τῷ τείχει [ἀνδρῶν] ὄντων ἐλλᾶπτόνων, αἰσχιστον ἂν ἐγένετο εἰ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ εἶλον τὴν πόλιν.
5. τὴν μητέρα σου εὖ ποιῆς!

Lesson XLVII **Reading****Section 290** **Thermopylae**

When Xerxes and the Medes invaded Greece, the Greeks waited in Thermopylae. This spot furnishes a narrow pass into Greece. Leonidas was in command, being the king of the Lacedaemonians. When Xerxes was near, he sent forward a horseman to find out⁹² what the Greeks were doing and how many they were. The horseman⁹³ observed⁹⁴ the Lacedaemonians: some exercising, some combing their hair. For they adorn their hair whenever they expect danger.

After this, when the Medes attacked the Greeks, many fell. The next day, attacking again, they did no better. Then, the king indeed being at a loss, Ephialtes, a man from Malis, told him that there was a trail, which went through the mountains [and] to the rear of the Greeks.

When Leonidas discovered that the barbarians were crossing the mountains along this trail, he sent away the others⁹⁵, but he and 300 Spartans remained. For when he had done this, he expected that he would save⁹⁶ Greece. For the Pythian Oracle⁹⁷ said that it would be necessary⁹⁸ either that Lacedaemon, or their king, perish.

Then the barbarians attacked. At first they⁹⁹ held out and they killed many¹⁰⁰, but finally they all¹⁰¹ died. Upon [their] grave is this inscription: "O Stranger, tell the Lacedaemonians that in this place we lie, obeying their orders."¹⁰²

⁹² πεινσόμενον is future participle of purpose, from πυνθάνομαι.

⁹³ οὗτος

⁹⁴ ἐθεώρησε is 3rd sing., 1st aor. act. ind. of θεωρέω.

⁹⁵ The other Lacedaemonians.

⁹⁶ Note future tense of infinitive σώσειν.

⁹⁷ at Delphi

⁹⁸ δέοι is 3rd person sing., pres. opt. ind. of δέω

⁹⁹ The Spartans

¹⁰⁰ Persians

¹⁰¹ All the Spartans

¹⁰² The quotation of Cicero in footnote 5 on page 155 may be translated:

"Stranger, tell the Spartans that you have seen us lying here, while we obey the holy laws of our fatherland."

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson XLVIII **Imperative Active****Section 296** **Exercises**

a) What clues are afforded by the portions in heavy type?

εἶπ έ	2 nd p. sing; 2 nd aor imp. act. of εἶπον (see footnote 3, p. 157).	ἔσ τω	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. imp. act. of εἶμί. The clue is the personal ending -τω.
εἶπ ε	2 nd p. sing; 2 nd aor ind. act. of εἶπον. The clue is the circumflex accent on the penult + the personal ending.	ἔσ τε	2 nd pers. pl.; pres. imp. act. of εἶμί. The clue is the accent – see the following form.
κελ εῦσ ον	neut. nom/acc. sing; fut. act. part. of κελεύω. The clue is the accent. ¹⁰³	έσ έ	2 nd pers. pl.; pres. ind. act. of εἶμί. The clue is the accent – see the preceding form.
κέλ ευ ον	2 nd pers. sing.; 1 st aor. imp. act. of κελεύω. The clue is the recessive accent.	λειπέ τω	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. imp. act. of λείπω. The clue is the personal ending -τω + the present stem.
ή ρπά σα τε	2 nd pers. pl; 1 st aor. ind. act. of ἀρπάζω. The augment is a sign of the indicative mood; the -σα is the tense sign for the 1 st aorist.	ά ρπά σα τε	2 nd pers. pl.; 1 st aor. imp. act. of ἀρπάζω. The clues are the lack of augment and the 1 st aor. tense sign -σα.

¹⁰³ This form is difficult, if not impossible, to derive from the paradigms in Crosby & Schaeffer, or *Smyth*. The identification of this form is based on a suggestion by Dr. John Finamore of the University of Iowa.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

b) Translate:

1. And to whom this seems best, let him take up arms and go to the front.
2. Do not report that the horsemen are very few.
3. "Tell then, Xenophon," said he, "what even you say against¹⁰⁴ us".
4. May you not hope that I will be worse in your presence than you [will be] in mine.
5. Have courage about the march upcountry.
6. To the horsemen he said, "Be noble men so that you may be worthy of freedom".
7. It is necessary to do one or the other [lit: "the other of two things"]: either to follow me or to no longer consider me to be general.
8. But may you not praise the disgraceful orators.
9. Hold up your hand, if you are giving praise.

Section 297 Salamis

O sons of the Greeks, go,
make your fatherland free,
free your children, wives,
the seats of your fathers' gods,
the tombs of your ancestors.
Now is the contest on behalf of all.

Section 298 Poet and Patriot

This monument of wheat-bearing Gela covers the perished¹⁰⁵ Athenian,
Aeschylus, son of Euphorion,
But the grove of Marathon might tell about his famous valor,
And the long-haired Mede learned of it.

Section 299 Drink to Me Only

But I am not a wine-lover, yet whenever you wish to make me drunk,
You first taste it, present it, and I receive it.
For if you touch me with your lips, no longer is it easy to be sober, nor
easy to flee the sweet wine-pour.
For the cup brings to me a kiss from you,

¹⁰⁴ *LS*, entry for *πρός*, C.4, p. 684.

¹⁰⁵ *καταφθίμενον* is from *καταφθίω*, and means "waste away", "perish" in the passive (*LS*, entry for *καταφθίω*, II, p. 418).

And tells me the favor which it takes.

Lesson XLIX Imperative Middle And Passive

Study Notes: Summary of Imperative Forms For Lessons XLVIII and XLIX

	παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύθη	
Pres. Imper. Act.		
	παῦε	παύετε
	παύετω	παυόντων
Pres. Imper. Middle		
	παύου (παύ-ε-σο)	παύεσθε
	παυέσθω	παυέσθων
1 st Aor. Imper. Act.		
	παῦσον	παύσατε
	παυσάτω	παυσάντων
1 st Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	παῦσαι	παύσασθε
	παυσάσθω	παυσάσθων
	εἶπον	
2 nd Aor. Imper. Act		
	εἶπέ (See Note 3, p.157)	εἴπετε
	εἶπέτω	εἰπόντων
2 nd Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	εἶποῦ (εἶπέσο, see §301)	εἴπεσθε
	εἶπέσθω	εἰπέσθων

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην	
Pres. Imper. Act.		
	λείπε	λείπετε
	λειπέτω	λειπόντων
Pres. Imper. Mid.		
	λείπου (λείπε-σο)	λείπεσθε
	λειπέσθω	λειπέσθων
2 nd Aor. Imper. Act.		
	λίπε	λίπετε
	λιπέτω	λιπόντων
2 nd Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	λιποῦ (λιπέσο, see §301)	λίπεσθε
	λιπέσθω	λιπέσθων
	πράττω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, πέπραγα/πέπραχα, πέπραγμαi, ἐπράχθην (stem πραγ-)	
Pres. Imper. Act.		
	πράττε	πράττετε
	πραττέτω	πραττόντων
Pres. Imper. Mid.		
	πράττου	πράττεσθε
	πραττέσθω	πραττέσθων
1 st Aor. Imper. Act.		
	πράξον	πράξατε
	πραξάτω	πραξάντων
1 st Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	πραξαι	πράξασθε
	πραξάσθω	πραξάσθων

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἵληφα, εἵλημμαι, ἐλήφθην	
Pres. Imper. Act.		
	λάβε	λάβετε
	λαμβάνετω	λαμβάνοντων
Pres. Imper. Mid.		
	λάβου (λάβε-σο)	λάβεσθε
	λάβέσθω	λάβέσθων
2 nd Aor. Imper. Act.		
	λάβέ (See Note 3, p. 157)	λάβετε
	λάβέτω	λάβόντων
2 nd Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	λαβοῦ	λάβεσθε
	λάβέσθω	λάβέσθων
	φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, πεφίληκα, πεφίλημαι, ἐφιλήθην	
Pres. Imper. Act.		
	φίλει	φιλείτε
	φιλείτω	φιλούντων
Pres. Imper. Mid.		
	φιλοῦ	φιλείσθε
	φιλείσθω	φιλείσθων
1 st Aor. Imper. Act.		
	φίλησον	φιλήσατε
	φιλησάτω	φιλησάντων
1 st Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	φίλησαι	φιλήσασθε
	φιλησάσθω	φιλησάσθων

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, -, ἀφίγμαι, -	
Pres. Imper. Mid.		
	ἀφικνοῦ (ἀφικνέ-ε-σο)	ἀφικνεῖσθε
	ἀφικνεῖσθω	ἀφικνεῖσθων
2 nd Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	ἀφῖκοῦ (ἀφῖκέ-σο)	ἀφῖκεσθε
	ἀφῖκέσθω	ἀφῖκέσθων
	μεταπέμπομαι, μεταπέμφομαι, μετεπεμψάμην, μεταπέπομθα, μεταπέπεμμαι, μετεπέμφθην	
Pres. Imper. Mid.		
	μεταπέμπου (μεταπέμπε-σο)	μεταπέμπεσθε
	μεταπεμπέσθω	μεταπεμπέσθων
1 st Aor. Imper. Mid.		
	μεταπέμψαι	μεταπέμψασθε
	μεταπεμψάσθω	μεταπεμψάσθων
	εἶμι (sum)	
Pres. Imper. Act.		
	ἴσθι	ἔσθε
	ἔστω	ἔστων

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 304 Exercises

a) What clues are afforded by the portions in heavy type?

λείπ ου	2 nd pers. sing.; pres. imper. mid. of λείπω.	κελευέ σθω	3 rd pers. sing; pres. imper. mid. of κελεύω. The clue is the 3 rd pers. sing. personal ending of the imperative mood.
ἐ λείπ ου	2 nd pers. sing.; imperf. ind. mid. of λείπω. The clues are the augment + pres. stem + contracted 2 nd pers. middle ending.	κελευσά σθων	3 rd pers. pl.; 1 st aor. imper. mid. of κελεύω. The clues are the 1 st aor. tense sign -σα + the 3 rd pers. pl. middle personal ending of the imperative mood.
λιπ οῡ	2 nd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. imper. middle of λείπω. The clues are the circumflex accent + contracted 2 nd pers. middle ending.	κελεύ σασθε	2 nd pers. pl.; 1 st aor. imper. mid. of κελεύω. The clues are the 1 st aor. tense sign -σα + the 2 nd pers. pl. mid. personal ending of the imperative mood.
κωλ οῡ σαι	1 st aor. inf. act. of κωλύω. The clue is the circumflex on the penult, which is characteristic of the 1 st aor. inf. act.	ἐ κελεύ σασθε	2 nd pers. pl.; 1 st aor. ind. mid. of κελεύω. The clues are the augment + 1 st aor. tense sign -σα + the 2 nd pers. pl. middle personal ending.
κ ώ λυσαι	2 nd pers. sing.; 1 st aor. imper. mid. of κωλύω. The clues are the -αι ending, which signals imper. or 1 st aor. inf. act., plus the recessive accent, which means it cannot be the 1 st aor. inf. act.		

b) Translate:

1. "And now," he said, "let us not delay¹⁰⁶, gentlemen, but go off and choose commanders at once, you who need them¹⁰⁷, and when you have chosen, go into the middle of the camp¹⁰⁸."
2. But, if you wish, wait for the army, [and] I will go; on the other hand, if you wish, you go to the mountain, for I wish to remain.
3. Once you have turned back again, depart from this place.
4. Take care lest you seem worse than the old man.
5. Do not choose the things there rather than the things by me.
6. So that you may learn about the things up [there], summon the trusted guide.

c) Write in Greek:

1. μὴ εἰσπίπτετε εἰς τὰς ναῦς.
2. εἰ ἐλεύθεροί εἶναι βούλουσι, ὡς ἄριστοι ἔστων.
3. οἱ γερόντες πραττόντων ἅτινα αὐτοῖς δοκῆ.
4. θαρροῦντες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ὦμεν.
5. μὴ ἔλπιζε τὰς ναῦς ἔτι ὠφελεῖν.

Section 305 Pro Patria (Selections from Tyrtaeus)

I

For it is good to die, fallen among the foremost¹⁰⁹,
the best man, fighting for his country.

.....

Let us fight with courage for this country and for its children,
Let us die, never again sparing [our] lives.
O young men, you fight standing by each others' side,
Nor do you begin a shameful flight nor begin to fear¹¹⁰,
But you build a great, valiant spirit in your breasts,
Nor are you cowardly when fighting men.

II

Up, sons of Sparta, that abounds in good men,
[sons] of citizen-fathers,
Put forward the shield in the left hand,
Lift high the spear courageously,
Not sparing your life.
For that is not customary in Sparta.

¹⁰⁶ LS, entry for μέλλω (II), p. 496.

¹⁰⁷ δεόμενοι

¹⁰⁸ This sentence is adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 3.1.46.

¹⁰⁹ LS, entry for πρόμαχος, -ον p. 680.

¹¹⁰ ἄρχετε μὴδὲ φόβου

Lesson L Future of Liquid Verbs

Section 310 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. We shall reply regarding these matters whenever someone shows up to tell us the news concerning the battle.
2. But it's necessary to look into this, in order that¹¹¹ you will not throw away the excellence which you received from your ancestors.
3. We shall prepare ourselves that we will seem to be worthy of this land.
4. I shall take care of my friends so that they may choose my side rather than the King's side.
5. I judge that you are worthy of much.
6. He will inquire how to get ahold of men [who are] as brave as possible¹¹².
7. It's necessary the we be concerned how to appear worthy of this freedom.
8. For you will not kill these free people, lest it be evident that you are evil¹¹³.

b) Complete:

1. ταῦτα μέλλει ἀγγελεῖν ἐπὶ πρὸς βασιλέα ἀφίκηται.
2. Κῦρον γὰρ χρὴ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ὅπως τὰ δίκαια ἀποκρίνηται.
3. σκοποῦντων ὅπως ἀμείνους φανοῦνται ἢ πολλοὶ βάρβαροι.

c) Write in Greek:

1. μενέτω ἄρχων τοῦ στόματος.
2. πορευεῖσθε κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπὶ εὐρητε τοὺς ἀποροῦντας.
3. μὴ ἀπαλλάττου ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου ἔαν μὴ τις πιστὸς ἐκεῖ παρῆ.
4. φυλάττωνται μὴ οἱ ἰππεῖς αὐτῶν γίνωνται ὄπισθεν.

¹¹¹ This sentence illustrates an object clause with the future indicative.

¹¹² For this use of ὅτι with a superlative adjective to denote the highest degree possible, see CS, Vocabulary for Lesson XLI, §255, p. 135.

¹¹³ Literally "lest you be apparent that you are evil".

Section 311 The Almighty Dollar

Epicharmus says that the gods are
Winds, water, earth, sun, fire, stars.
I supposed that the gods that are useful to us are
Gold and silver.
Find them and install them into your house.
What do you want? You will have everything:
Land, houses, servants, silver work,
Friends, judges, witnesses. Only give!¹¹⁴
For you will have those gods as slaves.

-- Menander, fragment.

Section 312 Persian Treachery

When they were at the headquarters of Tissaphernes the generals were summoned within. The captains remained [outside] the headquarters. A little time later, at the signal, those within were captured and those outside were slain. After this, some of the barbarian horsemen, traveling through the plain, met some Greeks and killed all of them. The Greeks, who saw this from the camp, marveled at the deed. The Greeks, all of whom were frightened, went running to [take up] their weapons for they thought that they [the Persians] would immediately come to the camp.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 2.5.31-34.

¹¹⁴ i.e., you only have to spend money to buy these things.

Lesson LI Aorist of Liquids

Section 316 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. It will concern me how we will arrive in time.
2. He is afraid that those from the right wing (of the army) will not run to the summit.
3. It is not easy to learn your plan.
4. We were afraid lest the company be angry at us.
5. Would that they praise the queen's bravery.
6. The king cut off both the head and hands of Cyrus.
7. In the night we feared lest they discover where the gold is.
8. It is time for you to figure out whether or not you will follow me.
9. And the strongest intend to run down from the mountains.

b) Complete:

1. φοβοῦμαι μὴ ὁ ἀνὴρ χαλεπήνη, ἐπειδὴν αἰσθάνηται τὴν οἰκίαν διαρπαζομένην.
2. σκοπεῖσθε ὅπως τό πράγμα μαθήσεσθε, πρὶν ἐκεῖ ἐλθεῖν¹¹⁵.
3. ἡμῶν ἦν φόβος μὴ οὐχ οἱ παῖδες τοὺς ἀποθανόντας εὖ λέγοιεν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. οὗτος ὁ ῥήτωρ φαίνεται σοφία ἤττων.
2. σκόπει ὅπως ἄξιός ἐσει τῆς ἐλευθερίας.
3. ἀποκρίνονται εὐθύς, ὅπως μὴ φαίνωνται δεῖν ἀρετῆς.
4. δεῖ σοι σκοπεῖν ὅπως οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει τοῦτο κρινοῦνται.
5. ὁ ἄρχων βουλευεῖ ὅπως τὸ τοῦ δεξιὸν κέρας τρέψει.

Section 317 Poor Seriphos!

When a man from Seriphos had said to Themistocles, that he did not have fame through his own efforts¹¹⁶, but on account of his city, [Themistocles responded:] “You speak the truth”, he said, “but if I were Seriphian I would not have become famous, nor would you [have become famous] as an Athenian.”

-- Adapted from Plutarch, *Themistocles*, 18:3.

¹¹⁵ §144, p. 79.

¹¹⁶ Literally, “through himself”, αὐτὸν ἔχει.

Section 318 Sang Froid

Charon: Now then, Hermes, it is impossible [to pay]. If some plague or war would send many down here, it then would be possible to make some profit from the ferry charges.

Hermes: Now then I will sit down [and wait], praying the worst might happen, so that I might recover the debts.

Charon: Right you are, Hermes!¹¹⁷ Now, few people, as you have learned, reach us. For there is peace.

Hermes: It is better thus, if help be extended to us by you. But the ancients, Charon, all arrived, manly, covered with blood, and many casualties. Now, some come, killed by poison [administered by] their son, or by the wife, all of them pale and ignoble, not like those [ancients]. Most, in fact, arrive due to money!

Charon: This is what is fought over [now].

Hermes: Justly, therefore, I would take aid from you.

-- Adapted from Lucian, *Dialogues of the Dead*, 4.

¹¹⁷ Literally, "It is not otherwise".

Lesson LII Perfect Active**Section 326 Exercises**

a) What clues are afforded by the portions in heavy type?

λε λοίπαμεν	reduplication + -α added to stem indicates 2 nd perfect. Form is 1 st pers. pl.; perf. act. ind. of <i>λείπω</i> .
ἐ στρατευ κότ ι	the ἐ is the reduplication for a verb whose stem is two consonants other than a mute+liquid. -κοτ indicates a participle. Form is masc./neut. dative sing; perf. act. part. of <i>στρατεύω</i> .
ἦ ρπά κε σαν	
ἐ ρρ ιφ έ ναι	reduplication + -ε added to stem indicates 2 nd perfect. Form is 2 nd perf. act. inf. of <i>ῥίπτω</i>
ἐ δε δοί κει	ἐ + δε is syllabic augment + reduplication, which shows the form to be pluperfect. κει shows the characteristic -κε of the perf. act. system + 3 rd pers. sing. personal ending for the pluperfect. Form is 3 rd pers. sing.; plu. perf. act. indic.
ἦ ρηκ υῖ αι	The -υῖ is characteristic of the feminine of the perf. act. part. The form is fem. nom. plural; perf. act. part. of <i>αἰρέω</i> .

b) Translate:

1. We have, indeed, made a campaign with the best men.
2. Having taken the trumpet he is running towards the King¹¹⁸.
3. Were you afraid that I would not send the gold to you?
4. Since Cyrus was dead, it was no longer necessary for us to march forward.
5. You were thinking that the barbarians have taken the summits in time.
6. He had persuaded them to do the same things.
7. When we came the guards had abandoned the camp.
8. Therefore, is their [any] evil which you have suffered through me?
9. When did he suspect that the others seized the wine?
10. Having thrown the arms, they attacked¹¹⁹ the houses.
11. The queen, having sent the messenger, drove toward the Greek army.

c) Write in Greek:

1. φοβείται μὴ φαινῶνται δικαιότεροι τοῦ βασιλέως.
2. ὁ παῖς οὐκ ἐχάλεπην ἐπεὶ ἔτεμε τὴν χεῖρα.
3. ἐφοβούμεθα μὴ οὐχ οἱ κακίονες [οἱ κακίους] ἤδωνται.
4. ἀνὰ κράτος ἔδραμον ἵνα ἤκοιεν ἐν χαίρω.

Section 327 A Cynical Thrust

Wishing to meet Pericles, he [Alcibiades] went to his headquarters. When he learned that¹²⁰ he was not at leisure, but was investigating how to render account concerning himself to the Athenians, Alcibiades, as he departed, said, “Then wasn’t it better that he investigate how not to render account to the Athenians?”

-- Adapted from Plutarch, *Alcibiades*, 7.2.

¹¹⁸ Note that this word is the accusative singular of the masculine noun βασιλεύς. Probably, Crosby & Schaeffer intend the word to refer to the Great King of Persia: “after the Persian War, the king of Persia was called βασιλεύς (without the Art.)” (*LS*, entry for βασιλεύς, III, p. 148).

¹¹⁹ See definition 2 (with εἰς) in the entry in *LS* for ἐμπίπτω, p. 255.

¹²⁰ In §215 (p. 114) Crosby & Schaeffer tell us that πυνθάνομαι takes either the participle or ὅτι construction in indirect discourse. This passage seems to contradict this assertion. Moreover, *Smyth*, §2144, p. 476, includes πυνθάνομαι in a list of verbs that can take either the participle **or infinitive** in indirect discourse.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson LIII Perfect Middle And Passive

Study Notes: Inflection of *παύω*, *λείπω*, *ἀτιμάζω* and *φαίνω* in the Perfect and Pluperfect Middle/Passive

Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative of <i>παύω</i>	
<i>πέπαυμαι</i>	<i>πεπαύμεθα</i>
<i>πέπαυσαι</i> (note lack of contraction)	<i>πέπαυσθε</i>
<i>πέπαιται</i>	<i>πέπονται</i>
Perfect Middle Infinitive: <i>πεπαῦσθαι</i>	
Perfect Middle Participle: <i>πεπαύμενος, -η, -ον</i>	
Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative of <i>λείπω</i> (stem <i>λελειπ-</i>)	
<i>λέλειμμαι</i> (<i>λέλειπμαι</i>)	<i>λελείμμεθα</i> (<i>λελείπμεθα</i>)
<i>λέλειψαι</i> (<i>λέλειπσαι</i>)	<i>λέλειψθε</i> (<i>λέλειπσθε</i>)
<i>λέλειπται</i>	<i>λελειμμένοι εἰσί</i> (<i>λελειπμένοι</i>)
Perfect Middle Infinitive: <i>λελειφθαι</i> (<i>λελειπ-σθαι</i>)	
Perfect Middle Participle: <i>λελειμμένος, -η, -ον</i>	
Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative of <i>ἀτιμάζω</i> (stem <i>ἡτιμαδ-</i>)	
<i>ἡτίμασμαι</i> (<i>ἡτίμαδμαι</i>)	<i>ἡτιμάσμεθα</i> (<i>ἡτιμάδμεθα</i>)
<i>ἡτίμασαι</i> (<i>ἡτίμαδσαι</i>)	<i>ἡτίμασθε</i> (<i>ἡτιμάδσθε</i>)
<i>ἡτίμασται</i> (<i>ἡτιμαδται</i>)	<i>ἡτιμασμένοι εἰσί</i> (<i>ἡτιμαδμένοι</i>)
Perfect Middle Infinitive: <i>ἡτιμάσθαι</i>	
Perfect Middle Participle: <i>ἡτιμασμένος, -η, -ον</i>	
Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative of <i>φαίνω</i> (stem <i>πεφαν-</i>)	
<i>πέφασμαι</i>	<i>πεφάσμεθα</i>
<i>πέφανσαι</i>	<i>πέφανθε</i>
<i>πέφανται</i>	<i>πεφασμένοι εἰσί</i>
Perfect Middle Infinitive: <i>πεφάνθαι</i>	
Perfect Middle Participle: <i>πεφασμένος, -η, -ον</i>	

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Pluperfect Middle/Passive Indicative of παύω	
ἔπεπαύμην	ἔπεπαύμεθα
ἔπεπαύσο	ἔπέπαυσθε
ἔπεπαύτο	ἔπέπαντο
Pluperfect Middle/Passive Indicative of λείπω	
ἔλελείμην	ἔλελείμεθα (ἐλελειπμεθα)
ἔλέλειψο (ἐλελειπσο)	ἔλέλειφθε (ἐλελειπσθε)
ἔλελειπτο	λελειμμένοι ἦσαν
Pluperfect Middle/Passive Indicative of ἀτιμάζω	
ἠτίμάσμην	ἠτίμάσμεθα
ἠτίμασο	ἠτίμασθε
ἠτίμαστο	ἠτίμασμένοι ἦσαν
Pluperfect Middle/Passive Indicative of φαίνω	
ἔπεφάσμην	ἔπεφάσμεθα
ἔπέφανσο	ἔπέφανθε
ἔπέφαντο	πεφασμένοι ἦσαν

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 333 Exercises

- a) Give mood, tense, person, number and present indicative of the verbs from which these forms come:

λελειφθαι	perf. mid. inf.	λείπω
λελειμμένοι εἰσὶ	3 rd pers. pl., perf. mid. ind.	λείπω
πέπεμπται	3 rd pers. sing., perf. mid. ind.	πέμπω
ἐπέπειστο	3 rd pers. sing., pluperf. mid. ind.	πείθω
ἤπασται	3 rd pers. sing., perf. mid. ind.	ἀρπάζω
ἐπέφαντο	3 rd pers. sing., pluperf. mid. ind.	φαίνω
ἤγγμένοι ἦσαν	3 rd pers. pl., pluperf. act. ind.	ἄγω
πέπραξαι	2 nd pers. sing., perf. act. ind.	πράττω
ἐτέταχθε	2 nd pers. pl., pluperf. act. ind.	τάττω
πέπεισμαι	1 st pers. sing., perf. act. ind.	πείσω
πεφάνθαι	perf. mid. inf.	φαίνω
πεπεμμένος	masc. nom. sing., perf. mid. part.	πέμπω
ἐπέπρακτο	3 rd pers. sing., pluperf. mid. ind.	πράττω
τατάγμεθα	1 st pers. pl., perf. mid. ind.	τάττω
ἠθροῖσθαι	perf. mid. inf.	ἀθροίζω
πεφάσμεθα	1st pers. pl., perf. mid. ind.	φαίνω

b) Translate:

1. There, along the river, a large, fortunate Greek city had been inhabited.
2. And while you remain there, it seems that I must investigate how you will remain [there] as safely as possible¹²¹.
3. If something should turn out [lit. "become"] well, they say that you will not remember [it].
4. His body was buried there, where he died fighting.
5. I, indeed, no longer remember everything, because there is much time [that has elapsed].
6. This one, because he became worse than the others, had been dishonored by the general¹²².
7. We must travel [lit. "It is necessary for us to travel"] many parasangs before we arrive at the trench¹²³.
8. This grave had been made for a great price.
9. The company will hurry until the trench becomes visible.

c) Write in Greek:

1. οἱ δῶκοντες τὸ σῶμα αὐτοῦ οὐχ ἠϋρήκασιν.
2. πεποίθᾳσι ὅτι ὁ βασιλεύς ἤρρηκε τὰς μέγιστᾳς πόλεις.
3. ὁ ἄγγελος πέπεικε τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος τέθνηκε.
4. ἡ σοῦ μήτηρ τινὰ ἐπεπόμφει ἵνα ἀγγείλειε τὸν θάνατον αὐτοῦ.

Section 334 Christ And The Tempter

It is written: A human being ["man" used generically for any human being] does not live on the basis of¹²⁴ bread alone, but on the basis of every¹²⁵ word coming out of the mouth of God.

-- Adapted from The Gospel According to St. Matthew 4:4.

¹²¹ This sentence might equally well be translated "And while you remain there, it seems to me that [you] must investigate how you will remain as safely as possible."

¹²² Smyth, §1488: "With passive verbs (usually in the perfect and pluperfect) and regularly with verbal adjectives in -τέος, the person in whose interest an action is done, is put in the dative. The notion of agency does not belong to the dative, but it is a natural inference that the person interested is the agent. ἐμοὶ καὶ τούτοις πέπρακται has been done by (for) me and these men"

¹²³ Note that the Greek in this sentence uses τὴν τάφρον ["the trench"], not τὸν τάφον ["the grave"].

¹²⁴ See entry in Greek-English vocabulary for ἐπί used with the dative case.

¹²⁵ See §122 (c), p. 68.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 335 A Narrow Escape

[Clearchus, a Spartan exile, and Menon, another Greek, were both generals of the mercenaries under Cyrus the Younger. Previous to this selection, one of Clearchus' men had had a disagreement with one of Menon's men. Clearchus had Menon's soldier flogged. The soldier had returned to Menon's army and told his friends about what had happened. This event was the cause of the bad blood between Clearchus and Menon's men.]

On the same day, Clearchus, having come upon the ford of the river, and having inspected the market, rode away towards his own tent through Menon's army with those few who were with him. Cyrus had not yet arrived, but was still approaching. One of Menon's soldiers was splitting wood. When he saw Clearchus coming through [the army], he threw [his] axe [at Clearchus], but he missed him. Another threw a rock, then another, [and] then, after an outcry began, many [threw rocks]. He [Clearchus] fled to his own army, and immediately called them to arms. He ordered the hoplites to remain there, holding their shields on their knees¹²⁶, while he, having gathered [lit. "having taken"] the Thracians, marched out against Menon's soldiers, with the result that [both] they, and Menon himself, became thoroughly frightened, and ran to arms.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1:5:12-13.

¹²⁶ That is, the heavy-armed troops were to remain ready, but in reserve

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson LIV Future And Aorist Passive

Study Notes

At last we have the last of the principal parts! Verb stems that end in a mute, as usual, show some changes due to the θ that is used to form the aorist passive stem. Stems ending in π, β switch to the aspirated ϕ . Stems ending in κ, γ become χ . The dentals (τ, δ, θ) become σ .

Section 342 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. The Athenians requested the citizens to send as many triremes as possible.
2. According to nature, law is the king of all.
3. Due to the width of the river, much time was wasted by the pursuers, so that those who were fleeing escaped.
4. A letter will be written against the king, whenever it is the right time.
5. Having taken the javelins in his hands he ran to the aid of the weaker.
6. O men, if you trust me, the greatest honor will be yours [lit., "you will be in the greatest honor"].
7. Having been fully prepared¹²⁷, the strongest did not fear that they would suffer evils.
8. Disregarding¹²⁸ danger, they did not wish to turn to flight.

b) Write in Greek:

1. μένουσιν ἡμῖν δεῖ σκοπεῖν ὅπως ἀσφαλῶς μενοῦμεν.
2. μεμνήμεθα αὐτοὺς οὐκ ἐπὶ τῷ τάφρῳ παυσαμένους¹²⁹.
3. τὸ μέγα μνῆμα ὑπὸ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ καὶ τῶν αὐτοῦ ἄνδρων λέλυται.
4. τῷ εὖρει τῷ τοῦ ποταμῶ¹³⁰ δεῖ ὑμῖν διαβῆναι.

¹²⁷ LS, entry for ἐξοπλίζω, p. 276.

¹²⁸ "Homer nodded". The 1928 edition of Crosby and Schaeffer shows "ἄμελοῦντες", which is a mis-print. The author assumes "ἀμελοῦντες" is intended.

¹²⁹ For the use of the participle, see §214 and page 114, footnote 1.

¹³⁰ Dative of Cause (CS, p. 127 note 3). Also possible is "διὰ τὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ εὖρος δεῖ ὑμῖν διαβῆναι."

Section 343 A Narrow Escape – Continued

[Proxenus was a Boeotian general and friend of Xenophon]

But Proxenus (for the latter came up with some of his hoplites following) led [his troops] right into the middle [of the disputants] and asked Clearchus not to attack¹³¹. But he [Clearchus] was outraged that he should speak so mildly about his treatment. He then ordered [Proxenus] to stand out of the middle [of the disputants]. Just then, Cyrus arrived and saw the situation. Immediately, he took the javelins into his hands and he went in between [the hostile parties], together with those members of his inner circle who were present¹³². He spoke as follows: “Clearchus, Proxenus and [you] other Greeks here – what are you doing? For if you fight each other, on this very day I will be chopped up – and you not long after me. Since the times are evil, all these barbarians will be more hostile to us than to those who are with the King”. When Clearchus heard this he came to himself¹³³ and both [sides] stopped themselves [from carrying on the quarrel].

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.5.14-17.

¹³¹ Lit., μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα, “not to do this”.

¹³² σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν.

¹³³ or, “came to his senses”

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson LV Principal Parts

Study Notes: Principal Parts Table

Please see the table of principal parts following Lesson LXXIX. This table includes all principal parts for all verbs presented in Crosby & Schaeffer.

Section 348 Exercise

Write in Greek:

1. τὰ παλτὰ ἠύρέθη ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀμάξαις πρὶν τι χρόνου διατριβῆναι.
2. τῆς πόλεως ἀλικομένης, ἐδεῖ ἡμῶν πρὸς τὸ ὄρος πορεύεσθαι.
3. ὁ ἄγγελος εἶπεν ὅτι ἡ ἐπιτολὴ οὐκ γραφήσοιτο.
4. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμάθομεν τὰ χρήματά σου κεκλεμμένα.
5. ὁ παῖς φοβεῖ μὴ αἰρηθῆται ἀντὶ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφοῦ.

Section 351 The Jealous Lover

The entire text¹³⁴ of Sappho's poem:

φαίνεται μοι κῆνος ἴσος θεοῖσιν
ἔμμεν ὄνηρ, ὅστις ἐναντίος τοι
ἰζάνει καὶ πλᾶσίον ἄδυ φωνεῖ
σᾶς ὑπακούει.

καὶ γελαίσας ἡμερόεν, τό μοι μάν
καρδίαν ἐν στήθεσιν ἐπτόασιν·
ὡς γὰρ εὔιδον βροχέως σε, φώνας
οὐδὲν ἔτ' εἴκει,

ἀλλὰ καὶ μὲν γλῶσσα ἔαγε, λέπτον δ'
αὔτικα χρῶ πῦρ ὑπαδεδρόμακεν,
ὀππάτεσσι δ' οὐδὲν ὄρημ', ἐπιρρόμ
βεισι δ' ἀκουαι,

ἀ δέ μ' ἴδρωσ κακχέεται, τρόμος δὲ
πᾶσαν ἄγρει, χλωροτέρα δὲ ποίας
ἔμμι, τεθνάκην δ' ὀλίγω 'πιδευής
φαίνομαι ἄλλα.

¹³⁴ This Greek text comes from E.T. Merrill, *Commentary on Catullus* (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1893) provided by The Perseus Digital Library, available from <http://www.perseus.tufts.edu/cgi-bin/ptext?doc=Perseus%3Atext%3A1999.02.0004&query=poem%3D%2350>, accessed September 2, 2006.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

The complete translation by J.A. Symonds (1833)¹³⁵

Peer of gods he seemeth to me, the blissful
Man who sits and gazes at thee before him,
Close beside thee sits, and in silence hears thee
 Silverly speaking,
Laughing love's low laughter. Oh this, this only
Stirs the troubled heart in my breast to tremble!
For should I but see thee a little moment,
 Straight is my voice hushed;

Yea, my tongue is broken, and through and through me
'Neath the flesh impalpable fire runs tingling;
Nothing see mine eyes, and a noise of roaring
 Waves in my ear sounds;
Sweat runs down in rivers, a tremor seizes
All my limbs, and paler than grass in autumn,
Caught by pains of menacing death, I falter,
 Lost in the love-trance.

¹³⁵ Source: "Peitho's Web", available from <http://www.classicpersuasion.org/pw/sappho/sape02.htm>, accessed December 11, 2005.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Catullus' version of this poem is found in *Carmina*, poem 51¹³⁶:

Ille mi par esse deo uidetur,
ille, si fas est, superare diuos,
qui sedens aduersus identidem te
spectat et audit
dulce ridentem, misero quod omnis
eripit sensus mihi: nam simul te,
Lesbia, adspexi, nihil est super mi
* * *¹³⁷
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artus
flamma demanat, sonitu suo
titinant aures, gemina teguntur
lumina nocte.
otium, Catulle, tibi molestum est:
otio exsultas nimiumque gestis:
otium et reges prius et beatas
perdidit urbes.¹³⁸

¹³⁶ Catullus, *Carmina LI*, from *C. Valerii Catulli Carmina*, ed. R.A.B. Mynors, Oxford Classical Texts (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1958), p. 35f.

¹³⁷ A verse is missing. v. Mynors, *op. cit.*, p. 36.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson LVI Numerals

Section 355 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Aristippus asks Cyrus for pay for 2,000 mercenaries – and for two months.
2. From there he goes four days' march through Lydia, twenty-two stades, to the river Meander.
3. There, at the trench, he remained for seven days.
4. The former wife of Cyrus arrived in six days.
5. From there he goes three days' march, 18 stades, towards the Euprates river, which is four stades wide.
6. It is a journey of 30 days from our city.

b) Complete:

1. *τρῆϊς καὶ ἕξ εἰσιν ἑννέα.*
2. *δέκα καὶ δέκα εἰσιν εἴκοσι.*
3. *ἕνδεκα καὶ δώδεκά εἰσιν εἴκοσι καὶ τρεῖς.*
4. *τὰ ἑξάκις πέντε ἐστὶ τριάκοντα.*
5. *τὰ δεκάκις ἑκατόν ἐστὶ χίλιοι.*
6. *τὰ πεντάκις ὀκτὼ ἐστὶ τετταράκοντα.*
7. *ἔστι τὰ δώδεκα δις ἕξ ἢ τρις τέτταρες ἢ τετράκις τρεῖς ἢ ἑξάκις δύο.*

Section 356 Greek Views On Death

“But it is necessary, O judges, for us to be hopeful concerning death, and to believe this one thing [to be] true, that there is nothing evil for the good man, either in living or in dying, nor are his troubles neglected by the gods.”

-- Adapted from Plato, *Apology*, 41 C,D.

“There is no mortal who lives without trouble:
He buries children and obtains new ones,
he dies himself and [other] mortals, for these things vexed,
carry him, earth into earth.
One must harvest life as ripe grain,
both being and not being. Why
must one bemoan these things that
it is necessary, by nature, to pass through? For
mortals, necessity is not fearful.”

-- Euripides, Fragment 747.1

Lesson LVII Review**Section 357 Assignments**

f) What indications of mood and tense appear in the heavy type?

Word	Person/Tense/Voice/Mood/Verb	Clues
ἤρπα σται	3 rd pers. sing; perf. mid. ind. of ἀρπάζω	combination of reduplication/augment and primary 3 rd pers. s. middle ending means it has to be perfect middle.
φαν ἦναι	1 st aor. pass. inf. of φαίνω	aorist stem + accent on penult.
κρί ναιεν	3 rd pers. pl.; 1 st aor. act. opt. of κρίνω.	the personal ending.
πε πομ φε	3 rd pers. sing; perf. act. ind. of πέμπω	reduplication and personal ending.
ἀγγε λει σθαι	fut. mid. inf. of ἀγγέλλω	single λ and circumflex accent (indicating vowel contraction).
ἐ παύ σω	2 nd pers. sing; 1 st aor. mid. ind. of παύω	The augment + the stem ending in σ + ω ending.
λε λει μμ ἔνος ῆ	3 rd pers. sing.; perf. mid. subj. of λείπω.	reduplication and double μ indicate perfect. ῆ is subj. of εἰμί.
τε τά χθαι	perf. mid. inf. of τάττω	reduplication, accent location and ending.
μαθ ἐ τω	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. act. imp. μαθάνω.	Stem is 2 nd aorist. Pers. ending is 3 rd pers. sing. of imperative.
λυ θείη	3 rd pers. sing.; 1 st aor. pass. opt. λύω.	-θ added to stem tells you it's aor. pass; ending is optative.
τραπ ῆσεται	3 rd pers. sing.; fut. pass.ind. of τρέπω.	Aorist stem, future passive ending.
ἦθροι σμένοι ῆσαν	3 rd pers. pl.; pluperf. mid. ind.	Perfect mid/pass. participle + imperfect of εἰμί.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

g) What clues are given by the accents?

Word	Person/Tense/Voice/Mood/Verb	Clue
κρίνοιεν	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. act. opt of κρίνω.	recessive accent
κρίνοῖεν	3 rd pers. pl.; fut. act. opt. of κρίνω.	circumflex shows vowel contraction has occurred. The future of κρίνω is κρίνέω.
κώλυσαι	3 rd pers. sing.; 1 st aor. act. opt of κωλύω.	recessive accent eliminates 1 st aor. act. inf. -αι is characteristic vowel pattern of aor. opt.
κωλύσαι	κωλύω.	accent on penult; aor. stem w/ ending of act. inf.
ἠθροικώς	masc. nom. sing.; perf. act. part. of ἀθροίζω.	Acute accent on ω in ultima.
φυγών	masc. nom. sing.; 2 nd aor. act. part. of φεύγω.	Acute accent on ω in ultima.
ἔστρατευμένον	neut. nom./acc. sing; perf. mid. part. of στρατεύω.	Accent is not recessive, but stays on penult.
γενέσθαι	2nd aor. mid. inf. of γίγνομαι.	Accent is not recessive, but stays on penult.
φιλεῖ	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. act. ind. of φιλέω.	Circumflex accent shows vowel contraction has occurred.
φίλει	2 nd pers. sing.; pres. act. imper. of φιλέω.	Recessive accent (φίλειε)
μαχεῖται	3 rd pers. sing; fut. act. ind. of μάχομαι.	circumflex shows vowel contraction has occurred. Future of μάχομαι is μαχέομαι.
ἀγγέλλουσι	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. act. ind. of ἀγγέλλω.	recessive accent (and double λ) indicate present tense of this verb.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

ἀγγελοῦσι	3rd pers. pl.; fut. act. ind. of ἀγγέλλω.	circumflex shows vowel contraction has occurred. Future of ἀγγέλλω is ἀγγελέω (with one λ).
εἰλήφαι	perf. mid. inf. of λαμβάνω.	Accent on penult, with inf. ending and perf. stem.
ἦσθου	2 nd pers. sing; 2 nd aor. mid. ind. of αἰσθάνομαι.	Recessive accent differentiates this form from the imperative middle form below.
αἰσθοῦ	2 nd pers. sing; 2 nd aor. mid. imper. of αἰσθάνομαι.	See §301, p. 161 for forms and accent of 2 nd aor. middle imperative. 2 nd pers. sing. always accented with circumflex on the ultima.

Section 358 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. εἴθε μηδεμία τῶν γυναικῶν μάθοι τὸ τεῖχος λελυμένον τοῖς πολεμίοις¹³⁹.
2. καὶ γὰρ φόβος ἐστὶ τοῖς ἥττοσι γενομένοις μὴ διατριβόμενοι ἀτίμασθήτε.
3. μὴ Κῦρον αἰτεῖτε χιλίους ξένους.
4. οὐδενὶ μέλει ὅπως ἀφελῆ τοὺς γέροντας.
5. μὴ νομίζατε τοὺς μῦρίους Ἑλληνας οὐ κακὰ πεπονθέναι ὑπὸ πολλῶν βαρβάρων.
6. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίζει ἀμφοτέρους λόχους μάλα θαρρήσασθαι πρὸς τῆς ἀναβάσεως¹⁴⁰.

b) Write in Greek:

1. μὴ κρίνετε ὡς μὴ κρίνονται¹⁴¹.
2. τεθηκότος τοῦ ἄρχοντος, δεῖ ἡμῖν διαβῆναι τὸν τάφρον.
3. εἴθε φαίνονται εἶναι ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας!
4. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, παρασάγγῃς τρεῖς καὶ εἴκοσιν.
5. ἄρ' ἡγγειλας τοὺς πέντε στρατηγούς ὑπὸ τῶν λοχαγῶν αἰρεθέντας;
6. ἐφοβοῦμεν μὴ ὁ τάφος ἀτίμασθείη.

¹³⁹ §331, p. 178.

¹⁴⁰ πρὸς + Genitive: "in regard to".

¹⁴¹ Or μὴ κρίνατε ὡς μὴ κρίθητε.

Lesson LVIII Reading**Section 360 The Original Research Man**

The Egyptians, before Psammetichus became their king, thought themselves to be the originals of all people. But since Psammetichus, after he became king, wished to find out who might have been the first, from this time [forward] they thought that the Phrygians were earlier than them [the Egyptians] and they themselves earlier than the others. For Psammetichus, so that he might investigate this, did the following: he orders a shepherd to raise two small boys in this way¹⁴², so that¹⁴³ no one¹⁴⁴ would, in their presence¹⁴⁵, say anything. The boys, then, lived¹⁴⁶ by themselves in a deserted house and the shepherd, at the appropriate time, would bring¹⁴⁷ them goats so that the boys might have milk. Psammetichus did and ordered this procedure¹⁴⁸ for the boys because he wished to hear what sound they would utter first.

So, after not a little time, when the shepherd came into the house, both boys, rushing up to him said “Bekos” and stretched out their arms. When Psammetichus himself heard [them] he inquired what people call something “Bekos”. Having investigated, he discovered that Phrygians call bread [“Bekos”].¹⁴⁹ Thus, then, the Egyptians agree that the Phrygians are older than themselves.

-- Adapted from Herodotus, *Histories*, 2.2.1-5.

Section 361 Business and Religion

And Jesus entered into the temple of God, and he threw out those who were selling and buying in the temple...and he said to them: “It is written, my house is to be called¹⁵⁰ a house of prayer, but you have made it a den of robbers.” And the blind and the lame came to him in the temple and he healed them. Having seen [this], the chief priests and the scribes wondered at what he did...they became angry.

-- Adapted from Matthew 21:12-16.

¹⁴² οὕτω

¹⁴³ ὥστε + infinitive: natural or probable result. §108, p. 60.

¹⁴⁴ μηδένα

¹⁴⁵ ἐναντίον αὐτῶν.

¹⁴⁶ This sentence is still, in the Greek, grammatically part of the ὥστε result clause. It is translated into a new sentence in an attempt to make the English translation more clear.

¹⁴⁷ ἐπάγειν is still grammatically part of the ὥστε result clause.

¹⁴⁸ ταῦτα

¹⁴⁹ That is, “bekos” is the Phrygian word for “bread”, according to Herodotus.

¹⁵⁰ κληθήσεται is 3rd pers. sing., fut. pass. ind. of καλέω (καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην).

Lesson LIX Present of ἴσθημι

Study Notes

Key Characteristics of the present system of ἴσθημι:

1. The verb's forms are generated by combining the Present Stem+the stem vowel α or η +a mood vowel (if optative)+the personal endings.
2. In the singular of the Active Voice of the Present Indicative and Imperfect Indicative, the stem vowel is η . Otherwise, the stem vowel is α .
3. The initial iota is long in all forms of the Imperfect Indicative (both active and middle/passive).
4. The Present Subjunctive, in both voices, combines the stem vowel α with the personal endings of the Subjunctive as though it were an "a contract" verb like $\tauιμάω$ (see Lesson LXVII).
 - $\alpha+\omega \Rightarrow \omega$
 - $\alpha+\eta$ or $\alpha+\eta\eta \Rightarrow \eta$ or $\eta\eta$.
 - if the α was accented, the resulting contraction carries the circumflex accent.
5. The mood vowel of the Optative is $\iota\eta$ in the Active Voice and ι in the Middle/Passive.
6. The 3rd pers. sing. and pl. of the Present Indicative Active are irregular.
7. The Middle/Passive voice of the Present and Imperfect Indicative uses the following irregular personal endings:
 - $-\mu\iota$ in the 1st pers. sing. of the Present Indicative Active.
 - $-ν$ in the 2nd pers. sing. of the Imperfect Indicative Active.

Section 365 **Inflection of δύναμαι in the Present System**

Middle/Passive Voice	
Present Indicative	
δύναμαι	δυνάμεθα
δύνασαι	δύνασθε
δύναται	δύνανται
Imperfect Indicative	
ἔδυνάμην	ἔδυνάμεθα
ἔδυνασο/ἔδύνω ¹⁵¹	ἔδυνασθε
ἔδύνατο	ἔδύναντο
Present Subjunctive	
δύνωμαι ¹⁵²	δυνώμεθα
δύνῃ	δύνησθε
δύνηται	δύνωνται
Present Optative	
δυναίμην	δυναίμεθα
δύναιο	δύναισθε
δύναιτο ¹⁵³	δύναιντο
Present Imperative	
δύνασο	δύνασθε
δυνασθω	δυνασθων
Present Infinitive	
δύνασθαι	
Present Participle	
δυνάμενος, -η, -ον	

¹⁵¹ ἔδύνω is, according to CS, p. 198, footnote 4, the more common form.

¹⁵² Note recessive accent, unlike present subjective middle/passive of ἴστημι.

¹⁵³ Note recessive accent, unlike present optative middle/passive of ἴστημι.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 367 Exercise

Translate:

1. Nor would I be able to be sanguine¹⁵⁴ concerning the peace.
2. But you do not yet understand into what sort of contest you go.
3. It is not possible for us to halt all the force at that place.
4. Then the guards ordered him to halt.
5. Thus, that one was afraid lest another satrap be appointed¹⁵⁵ into the command¹⁵⁶.
6. We knew both how to lead and how to be led.
7. You accumulated power – as much as you were able to.
8. If you stop the phalanx at the river, it will not be possible for the enemy to pursue from behind.
9. If he were to learn these matters¹⁵⁷ he would be able to help his friends and hinder his enemies.

Section 368 Fond Parents

Concerning his son, who was making sport of his mother, and through her, making a joke of him, Themistocles said that the boy had the most power of the Greeks. For the Athenians gave orders¹⁵⁸ to the Greeks, and he [Themistocles] gave orders to the Athenians, and his mother gave orders to Themistocles, and the boy gave orders to his mother.

-- Adapted from Plutarch, *Themistocles*, 18.4

Section 369 A Fish In The Hand

A fisherman once caught a small fish. The fish said “Sir, I am much too small. So now release me, and fish for me when I have become bigger. For, if you do this, it will be a great advantage to you.” The fisherman replied: “But I would be very foolish, were I not to take the present gain but pursue an unclear hope.” The story makes plain that better is gain in the present, though it be small, than in future.¹⁵⁹

-- Adapted from Aesop¹⁶⁰.

¹⁵⁴ Lit. “to have courage”, but the sense seems to be “to be confident about the peace”.

¹⁵⁵ *LS*, entry for καθίστημι, def. II.2., p. 390.

¹⁵⁶ *LS*, entry for ἀρχή, def. II, p. 121.

¹⁵⁷ Lit. “ταῦτα γ’ ... ἐπιστάμενος”: “Learning these things”.

¹⁵⁸ The indirect discourse, governed by ἔφη, continues.

¹⁵⁹ Lit. “τοῦ μὴ παρόντος” “that the not present”.

¹⁶⁰ Aesop 130.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson LX Second Aorist Active Of ἵστημι**Section 371 Inflection of στάς and ἕβην**

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing. Nom. & Voc.	στάς	στάσα	σάν
Genitive	σάντος	στάσης	σάντος
Dative	σάντι	στάση	σάντι
Accusative	σάντα	στάσαν	σάν
Pl. Nom. & Voc.	σάντες	στάσαι	σάντα
Genitive	σάντων	στασῶν	σάντων
Dative	σάσι	σάνταις	σάσι
Accusative	σάντας	στάσᾶς	σάντα

2 nd Aorist Indicative Active	
ἕβην	
ἕβης	
ἕβη	
ἕβημεν	
ἕβητε	
ἕβησαν	
2 nd Aorist Subjunctive Active	
βῶ	
βῆς	
βῆ	
βῶμεν	
βῆτε	
βῶσι	
2 nd Aorist Optative Active	
βαίην	
βαίης	
βαίη	
βαῖμεν/βαίημεν	
βαῖτε/βαίητε	
βαῖεν/βαίησαν	

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

2 nd Aorist Imperative Active	
βῆθι	
βήτω	
βήτε	
βάντων	
2 nd Aorist Infinitive Active	
βῆναι	
2 nd Aorist Participle Active	
βάς, βᾶσα, βάν	
2 nd Perfect Indicative Active	
βέβηκα	
βέβηκας	
βέβηκε	
βέβαμεν	
βέβατε	
βεβᾶσι ¹⁶¹	
2 nd Perfect Infinitive Active ¹⁶²	
βεβάναι	
2 nd Perfect Participle Active	
βεβώς, βεβυῖα, βεβός	
2 nd Pluperfect Indicative Active	
έβεβήκη	
έβεβήκης	
έβεβήκε	
έβέβαμεν	
έβέβατε	
έβέβασαν	

¹⁶¹ This form was originally βεβᾶσι (LS, entry for βαίνω, p.144).

¹⁶² 2nd Perf. Subj. and Opt. Active forms not attested (LS, entry for βαίνω, p.144).

Section 374 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. All the same, although you have in no way been injured by me, you changed to the enemy's side¹⁶³ [and] did what ever wrong you were able [to do] to my country.
2. Having thrown the other things into the fire he mounted his horse and rode away.
3. I therefore say that it is necessary for you to cross the Euphrates river before it is evident what the other Greeks will reply.
4. Thereupon he turned [and] dispatched the men, who ran easily up to the mountains.
5. I was afraid that they would not cross¹⁶⁴ the plain on the run.
6. But, all the same, when he stopped the chariot he learned where the horsemen were.
7. Therefore, when Darius was dead the elder [son] took over the government.
8. If I desert to him, he will perhaps send me valuable gifts¹⁶⁵.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ἔὰν δύνῃ τὸν οἶνον ἐπωλήσαι, τὸ κέρδος σοί ἐστιν¹⁶⁶.
2. ὁ σοῦ υἱὸς ἐπίσταται ὠφείλειν τοὺς ἱκανοτάτους.
3. ἡ τοῦ παιδὸς μήτηρ παρὰ τῆ θύρα ἵσταται.
4. ὁ λοχᾶγὸς ἵστησι τοὺς ἄνδρας παρὰ τῷ μνήματι.

Section 375 "O Wad Some Power"¹⁶⁷

A mosquito landed on the horn of a bull and remained there a long time. When he was about to take off he inquired of the bull whether he now wished him to depart. The bull replied "But I did not know when you came, nor will I know if you have left."

With this story one might be able to teach the powerless person that, whether present or absent, he is neither beneficial nor, for that matter, harmful.

-- Adapted from Aesop, 235¹⁶⁸.

¹⁶³ ἀποστάς εἰς πολέμιους

¹⁶⁴ 3rd pers. pl; 2nd Aor. Opt. Act. of διαβαίνω.

¹⁶⁵ δῶρα...πολλοῦ ἄξια: Lit. "gifts worthy of much".

¹⁶⁶ Present General condition. For the accentuation of κέρδος σοί ἐστιν, see Smyth, §185.

¹⁶⁷ "O wad some power the giftie gie us/To see oursels as ithers see us!" ("Oh would some power the gift give us, to see ourselves as others see us."). From "To A Louse", by Robert Burns. The subject of a poem is an incident in which the poet saw a woman in church sporting a new hat. Unknown to her, but visible to everyone else, there was a louse on the hat's plume.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson LXI **Indirect Discourse****Study Notes: Inflection of βούς, βασιλεύς, ναῦς**

These three nouns have a seemingly unusual inflection, due to the fact that the stem ends in a diphthong. For the reader's convenience, the singular and plural of these common nouns is inflected here, following the pattern in §509(g):

Sing. Nominative	βασιλεύς ¹⁶⁹ , ὁ	ναῦς, ἡ	βούς, ὁ or ἡ
Genitive	βασιλέως	νεώς	βούς
Dative	βασιλεῖ	νηῖ	βοῖ
Accusative	βασιλέᾱ	ναῦν	βούν
Vocative	βασιλεῦ	ναῦ	βού
Pl. Nom./Voc.	βασιλεῖς	νηες	βόες
Genitive	βασιλέων	νεῶν	βοῶν
Dative	βασιλεῦσι	ναυσί	βουσί
Accusative	βασιλέας	ναῦς	βούς
Vocative	βασιλεῖς	νηες	βόες

¹⁶⁸ This story seems to be adapted not from *Aesop* 235, as Crosby & Schaeffer say, but rather from *Aesop* 261 "The Gnat and the Bull". The moral of the story, in *Aesop* 261, is that some people are of more consequence in their own eyes than in the eyes of their neighbors.

¹⁶⁹ The student is cautioned about four related words, all used frequently in Xenophon and Herodotus, that have very similar stems and forms: βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ (*king*); βασίλεια, βασιλείας, ἡ (*queen*, note that the final -a is short); βασιλειᾱ, βασιλείας, ἡ (*kingdom*); βασιλείος, -ᾱ, -ον (as an adjective, *royal*; as a noun, τὰ βασίλεια, *palace*).

Section 380 Exercises

a) What clues are given by the portions in heavy type?

Word	Form	Clue
φα ίη	3 rd pers. sing; pres. opt. act.	present stem + personal ending of pres. opt. act.
ξ φαμεν	1 st pers. pl.; imperf. ind. act.	augment+present stem+personal ending of imperf. ind. act.
φά τω	2 nd pers. sing; pres. imper. act.	present stem+personal ending of imper. act.
ξ φη σε	3 rd pers. sing.; 1 st aor. ind. act.	augment+1 st aor. stem+personal ending of 1 st aor. ind. act.
φά ναι	pres. inf. act.	present stem+infinitive ending.
φή σει	3 rd pers. sing.; fut. act. ind.	future stem(ends in -σ)+personal ending of fut. ind. act.
φα μέν	1 st pers. pl.; pres. ind. act.	present stem+personal ending of pres. ind. act.
φ ῶ σι	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. subj. act.	circumflexed omega is characteristic of this form.

b) Translate:

1. What do you have in mind concerning the peace?
2. Therefore, having considered these things, I guarded the cattle for the entire night.
3. He promised him, if he would come, to make him a friend of Cyrus, whom, said he, he thought to be worth more to himself than his own country¹⁷⁰.
4. We struck the one who had brought false news, so that he might no longer lie.
5. Therefore I hear that the trenches are no more than 20 stades distant.
6. When were they saying that he would not be able to purchase a hundred cows?
7. Nor indeed are they surprised if the Thracian was false.
8. Where do they say that this [woman] was buried¹⁷¹ by the barbarians?
9. The whole is greater than the part.

¹⁷⁰ This sentence comes from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 3.1.4. To induce Xenophon to participate, Proxenus had told Xenophon that he, Proxenus, valued Cyrus more highly than his own country.

¹⁷¹ 2nd aor. inf. pass. of θάπτω, θάψω, ἔθαψα, ἔθαψαι, ἔταψαν.

c) Write in Greek:

1. αἱ γυναικὲς δράμουσαι ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας ἐνταῦθα ἔστησαν.
2. ἔπειτα οἱ ὀπλίται δρόμῳ διέβησαν τὸν πεδῖον.
3. οὐπω μέντοι οὐκ ἔγνωσαν τὸν στρατηγὸν τοὺς ἄνδρας ἰστάντα.
4. μὴ στήθι ἔαν μὴ πύθῃ ἡμῶν ἀσφαλεῖς ὄντων¹⁷².

Section 382 Attic Salt

[At this point in the *Anabasis*, Cyrus has died and Tissaphernes, as the Greek mercenaries were marching back during the truce, has treacherously caused the murder of their generals. New generals have just been elected by the Greeks, including Xenophon the Athenian, the author of the *Anabasis*, who was elected in place of Proxenus. As this passage opens, the day after the election has just dawned and the new generals are speaking to an assembly of the Greek mercenaries. Excerpts from Xenophon's speech are given in the following passage]:

"If any of you are discouraged that we do not have horses, but the enemy has many, keep in mind that ten thousand horses are no different¹⁷³ than ten thousand men. For never yet in battle has anyone, kicked or bitten by a horse, died. But it is men who do what happens in battle. Moreover, we are on a much safer vehicle¹⁷⁴ than horsemen. For they hang upon the horse, afraid not only of us but of falling off! We, standing¹⁷⁵ on the ground will strike much more strongly, if anyone comes upon us. In only one [way] do the horsemen exceed us: it is safer for them to flee than [it is] for us".

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 3.2.18-19

¹⁷² πυνθάνομαι is followed by the participle when the thing learned is learned by actual perception. When the learning is from intellectual perception, it may take the participle or ὅτι/ὡς with a finite verb. When the participle is not in indirect discourse, as in this sentence, it stands in the genitive. Were it in indirect discourse, it would stand in the accusative. *Smyth* §2110-2112.

¹⁷³ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ: lit., "not other than".

¹⁷⁴ Crosby & Schaeffer's hint, 'support', is less helpful than another meaning of ὄχημα, ὀχήματος, το: "vehicle".

¹⁷⁵ *LS*, entry for βαίνω, A.I.2, p. 144: "in pf. to stand or be in a place".

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Lesson LXII Present of τίθημι And ἔημι**Study Notes: Inflection of τιθείς, τιθειῖσα, τιθέν**

Singular			Plural		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
τιθείς	τιθειῖσα	τιθέν	τιθέντες	τιθειῖσαι	τιθέντα
τιθέντος	τιθειῖσης	τιθέντος	τιθέντων	τιθειῖσῶν	τιθέντων
τιθέντι	τιθειῖση	τιθέντι	τιθειῖσι	τιθειῖσαις	τιθειῖσι
τιθέντα	τιθειῖσαν	τιθέν	τιθέντας	τιθειῖσᾶς	τιθέντα

Section 388 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Now they were rushing just as one might run for the sake of his hide.¹⁷⁶
2. When one of the soldiers of Meno, who was chopping wood, saw Clearchus riding through, he threw [at him] with his axe.¹⁷⁷
3. But as soon as he saw his brother, he rushed upon him.
4. For we fear they will attack us at daybreak.¹⁷⁸
5. No Athenian had wisdom of such sort as Socrates.
6. They are putting the weapons into the boats.
7. They therefore said that they were putting the weapons into the boats.
8. On account of this they sent away the horses.
9. When, once and for all, we take a city of such size, it will not be necessary [for us] to be afraid¹⁷⁹ on account of men.

b) Write in Greek:

1. εἰ ἔφησαν τὴν εἰρήνην ἐπιθύμειν, ἂν ἐψεύσαντο.
2. ἐπύθετο τί¹⁸⁰ μελλήσειαν ποιήσειν περὶ τῶν ψευδῶν.
3. ἡ γυνὴ ἔφη τὸν ἄνδρα τὸν ἑαυτῆς υἱὸν πολλὰ παῖσαι.
4. ὑπίσχοῦντο δ' αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, βασιλέᾳ αὐτὸν ποιήσειν.

¹⁷⁶ τοῦ σώματος ἕνεκα.¹⁷⁷ See §335.¹⁷⁸ Lit., "For we fear lest they attack us at the same time as day."¹⁷⁹ δεδοικέναι is the perf. part. active of δείδω, δείσομαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα.¹⁸⁰ The acute accent of τίς, τί never changes to a grave in the monosyllabic forms. See §164, p. 91.

Section 389 Not All Dead Yet

The garrulous man is of such sort as this. He sits beside a man he does not know and speaks¹⁸¹ a eulogy about his own wife. Next, the dream that he had¹⁸² in the night, this he narrates. Then, each of the things he had for dinner he describes. Next, changing the subject, he talks about how the people of today are much inferior to those of old times¹⁸³; how good a value is the grain in the market; how there are many foreigners in town; [how] if Zeus had made more rain¹⁸⁴, agriculture would be better¹⁸⁵; how difficult is life. If anyone puts up with him, he will never go away!

-- Adapted from Theophrastus of Eresus, *Characters*

¹⁸¹ Note the repetition of the infinitive form in this extended example of "implied indirect discourse" (see *Smyth*, §2630).

¹⁸² Lit. "saw".

¹⁸³ The passage shows that this staple of small talk is at least 2,500 years old.

¹⁸⁴ Lit. "made more water".

¹⁸⁵ τὰ ἐν τῇ γῆ: "Things in the land".

Lesson LXIII Aorist Active And Middle Of τίθημι And ἵημι**Section 395 Exercises**

a) Translate:

1. He did not happen to keep the crown for many years.
2. So he hastened the whole way and did not delay unless on account of food or some other weighty [matter].
3. Then, since no one was speaking in opposition, the others agreed with this plan.
4. Having sent away the enemies, he will consult with this one alone.
5. With much haste, therefore, we put the weapons into the wagons.
6. And even by deed he made it plain that he would never abandon [people] if once¹⁸⁶ he had been a friend to them.
7. He stopped sacrificing, since his enemy had left.
8. He said that he planned to inflict the penalty on his enemies.
9. The woman reported that the men were dishonoring the grave.
10. Having distributed the weapons, the captain ordered the men to attack.

b) Write in Greek:

1. αὐτοῖς συντίθεται τῇ πάσῃ δυνάμει ἐπιθήσεσθαι¹⁸⁷.
2. ἱέντων λίθοις, εἶδε ἄνδρα παρελαύνοντα.
3. οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐ ἐθέλοντες ἀποκτείνειν τὸν ἄνδρα ἀφῆασι.
4. ὁ παῖς ἐδύνατο ἵέναι τοσοῦτω μακρότερον τοῦ πατρός.

Section 396 Ab Hoste Doceri¹⁸⁸

But the wise learn much indeed from [their] enemies.
Aristophanes, *Birds*, 375.

¹⁸⁶ LS, entry for ἄπαξ, p. 88: "once, once only, once for all".

¹⁸⁷ LS, entry for συντίθημι, ii.2, p. 780, "c. inf. to covenant or agree to do, Hdt., Thuc."

¹⁸⁸ "To learn from the enemy" is a quote from the story of Athamas and Ino in Ovid's *Metamorphoses*: "ipse docet, quid agam (fas est et ab hoste doceri)" (*Meta.* 4:428).

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Section 397 A Patriot

This is the tomb of that Adeimantus, whom Greece has crowned because of his plans for [her] freedom.

-- Simonides

Section 398 Undying Fame

If to die well is the greatest part of valor,
Fortune has apportioned this, above all things, to us,
who were eager to confer¹⁸⁹ freedom on Greece.
We lie [here] enjoying ageless praise.

-- Simonides

Section 399 Life's Tragedy

Philip, the father, laid out here his 12-year-old son, his entire hope, Nikoteles.

-- Callimachus

Section 400 Play The Game

Life is all a stage and game. Either take on zeal and learn to play, or bear the pain.

-- Greek Anthology

Section 401 The Sober Second Thought

More easily controlled is neither the mighty stone, thrown from the hand,
nor the word, thrown from the tongue.

-- Menander, fragment

¹⁸⁹ *LS*, entry for περιτίθημι, ii, p. 633: "metaph., like περιβάλλω, to bestow, confer upon, π. τινὶ βασιλείην, ἐλευθερίην Hdt., Thuc."

Section 402 Word Formation

"ἡ καλὴ πόλις has become *Gallipoli* of Anzac glory." The saga of the extraordinary, and tragic, events in the Gallipoli campaign of World War I were still fresh in their minds when Drs. Crosby and Schaeffer wrote their book. The authors are referring to the Gallipoli campaign of the First World War, in which Anzac ("Australia and New Zealand Army Corps") and other troops of the British Commonwealth landed on the Gallipoli peninsula near Constantinople in April of 1915. The landing was part of a plan to invade Turkey through the Gallipoli peninsula, take the Turkish (Ottoman) capitol, Constantinople, and open the Dardanelles Strait to the Allied fleets.

The landings on the Gallipoli Peninsula met heavy resistance from the defenders. The invasion quickly bogged down. In the nine-month campaign (25th April to 20th December, 1915), some 36,000 soldiers of the British Commonwealth died, of whom approximately 27,000 were Australian. One third of the New Zealanders taking part were casualties. After nine months the invasion was abandoned and the surviving troops withdrawn.

The strategy, tactics and results of this campaign are still hotly debated. However, one clear result of the campaign was the development of a heightened sense of nationhood among New Zealanders and Australians. Anzac Day, April 25, is a national holiday in both Australia and New Zealand.

Lesson LXIV Present of δίδωμι**Section 406 Exercises**

a) Translate:

1. Finally, Cyrus gives him up to¹⁹⁰ 6,000 soldiers and pay for six months.
2. What should I say to my enemies?
3. But at a moment like this I would be afraid to step into the boats which he gives us.
4. Although he wished [it], he was not able to repay.
5. Then would we demand a leader, if he were not providing boats?
6. Since they were well-disposed to the Greeks, they were giving back the provisions.
7. He promises that he will give each [person] a very beautiful crown.
8. Whenever he would find someone taking away a great deal of money from a just man, he would never take anything, but would always give in addition.
9. But what should we do? For while we are going through the barren country we will neither have a market nor anyone¹⁹¹ giving us provisions.

b) Write in Greek:

1. φοβοῦμαι μὴ λαβῶν δίκην μοι ἐπιτιθῆ.
2. ὁ ἄρχων ἔτυχε ἀφιείς τοὺς ὑμῶν ἐχθροὺς.
3. οὐπω ἐκέينو οἱ ἐπὶ τῷ τείχει πέπαινται ἴεντες λίθους κατὰ τῶν ἐπιτιθεμένων.
4. ἴσμεν¹⁹² τὸν ἄνδρα ὄντα¹⁹³ ἐτῶν τριάκοντα.
5. ὅσα τύχοι ἔχων, ἐν τοῖς φίλοις ἔνεμε.

¹⁹⁰ Smyth, §1686 1.c "Measure and Limit with numerals: εἰς χιλίους to the number of (up to) a thousand". The example cited by Smyth is from *Anabasis* 1.8.5. This use of εἰς is not discussed in CS prior to this exercise.

¹⁹¹ τὸν ἡμῶν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια διδόντα: The translation above is based on Smyth, §1124: "A participle with the article may denote an entire class: ὁ βουλόμενος anyone who wishes".

¹⁹² From οἶδα (See §542).

¹⁹³ Smyth §2106; also Smyth §2139: "οἶδα and ἐπίσταμαι with part. in O.O. (2106) = know that something is; with inf. not in O.O. = know how to do something."

Section 407 Out Of The Frying Pan

A man who had killed another man was being pursued by his relatives. A wolf approached him when he was near the Nile river. Since the man was afraid, he climbed up a tree and hid himself there. When he had settled himself thus [in the tree] he saw an adder approaching. [As a result] he dunked himself into the river. A crocodile, who had been awaiting him in this [river], devoured him.

-- Adapted from Aesop

Section 408 The Persian Courier Post

There is nothing that arrives more swiftly than these couriers. For they say that, as many days as the entire road may be, that many horses and men stand at intervals. For each days' journey a horse and a man is stationed, whom neither snow, nor rain, nor heat, nor night prevent from doing the run established for him as swiftly as possible. For the first one running hands over the message to the second, the second to the third, thence [the message], being handed over to the next, passes through, just like, among the Greeks, the torch-race which celebrates Hephaestus.

-- Adapted from Herodotus, *Histories*, 8.98

Lesson LXV Aorist Active And Middle Of δίδωμι

Section 413 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Would that they did not intend to dishonor us.
2. May he be thinking about advantage, if, at the same time, Socrates also be present.
3. If only he had not seen how to¹⁹⁴ prevail against his brother.
4. Would that he had not cut off his enemy's head.
5. May they hear¹⁹⁵ that you are well-disposed towards the Greeks.
6. If only they did have so much power.

b) Write in Greek:

1. οὐκ ἀποδιδῶμεν ὅ τι ὀφείλομεν;
2. εἰ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτῷ μισθὸν ἐξ μηνῶν δοίη, τοὺς ξένους ἂν ἄθροίζοι.
3. πάντες ἴσῃσι ἡμᾶς στέφανον παντὶ στρατιώτῃ διδόντας¹⁹⁶.
4. τὶ φῶ τοῖς ἐχθροῖς;

¹⁹⁴ See §308, p. 166.

¹⁹⁵ CS §192a, p. 102.

¹⁹⁶ Smyth §2106; also Smyth §2139: "οἶδα and ἐπίσταμαι with part. in O.O. (2106) = know that something is; with inf. not in O.O. = know how to do something."

Section 414 A Hard Customer

- Charon: Pay the fare, you scoundrel!
Menippus: Shout, if it gives you pleasure, Charon.
Charon: Pay, I say, because we have transported you.
Menippus: You would not take from him who doesn't have!
Charon: Is it possible that anyone does not have an obol¹⁹⁷?
Menippus: If anyone else [does not], I don't know; but I don't.
Charon: And, by Pluto, I'll strangle you, wretch, if you don't pay.
Menippus: And, once I strike you with this stick, will crack your skull.
Charon: So you will have made so long a journey for nothing!
Menippus: Let Hermes give it to you on my behalf, he who has handed me over to you.
Charon: This isn't about the fare. You have to give me the obol – otherwise it's not right.
Menippus: OK, then, lead me back to life.
Charon: You're joking! I'd get a beating for this from Aeacus.
Menippus: Don't bother [me] any more.
Charon: What do you have in your wallet?
Menippus: Beans, if you please, and my dinner from Hecate.
Charon: From where did you lead this dog to us, Hermes? He was chattering so much on the voyage, mocking the passengers and singing (by himself) while those [the other passengers] were groaning.
Hermes: Don't you know, Charon, the sort of man you've brought over – entirely free! Nothing worries him. This is Menippus!
Charon: And when I catch you...
Menippus: Good luck seizing me, o greatest one¹⁹⁸! But twice you cannot take me.

-- Adapted from Lucian, *Dialogues of the Dead*, 32.

¹⁹⁷ Crosby & Schaeffer translate “τὸν ὀβολόν” with “thrippence”. A “thrippence” was a coin of the United Kingdom with a value of 1/4 shilling or three pennies. Tuppence, thrippence, etc. were used until the 1971 decimalization of UK currency.

¹⁹⁸ Lit.: “May you seize me, O best one!”

Lesson LXVI Review**Section 416 Assignments**

g) Synopsis of the 3rd person singular in present and aorist systems for ἵστημι, τίθημι, δίδωμι:

	Active			Middle/Passive		
	ἵστημι	τίθημι	δίδωμι	ἵστημι	τίθημι	δίδωμι
Pres. Ind.	ἵστησι	τίθησι	δίδωσι	ἵσταμαι	τίθεται	δίδοται
Imperf. Ind.	ἕσθη	ἐτίθει	ἐδίδου	ἕστατο	ἐτίθετο	ἐδίδοτο
Pres. Subj.	ἵσθῃ	τιθῃ	διδῶ	ἵσθῆται	τιθῆται	διδῶται
Pres. Opt.	ἵσταιίη	τιθείη	διδοίη	ἵσταίτο	τιθείτο	διδοίτο
Pres. Imper.	ἵστάτω	τιθέτω	διδότω	ἵτάσθω	τιθέσθω	διδόσθω
2 nd Aor. Ind.	ἕσθη	ἔθηκε	ἔδωκε		ἔθετο	ἔδοτο
2 nd Aor. Subj.	σθῃ	θῃ	δῶ		θήται	ῶται
2 nd Aor. Opt.	σταιίη	θείη	δοίη		θείτο	δοίτο
2 nd Aor. Imper.	στάτω	θέτω	δότω		θέσθω	δόσθω

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 417 Exercises

a) Complete:

1. εἶθε ἔμαθον τοὺς Ἕλληνας τεινομένους ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.
2. τί ποιήσωμεν, εἴ μὴ τοὺς ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας στειλώσιν ἡμῖν βοηθήσοντας;
3. οὐχ ὥρᾶν φᾶσιν ἂν εἴη ὑμῖν ἀμελεῖν ὑμῶν αὐτῶν.
4. μέγα ἂν εἴη τὸ κέρδος, εἰ τύχοιεν αὐτῷ διδόντες τοιοῦτον στέφανον.
5. εἰ γὰρ ἔτη πολλὰ δύναιντο¹⁹⁹ κρατεῖν τοὺς ἐναντίους²⁰⁰.
6. καίπερ δυνάμενος οὐ μέλλει ἀποδιδόναι.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ὁ σατράπης ἐνόμιζεν τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἐνταῦθα ἂν²⁰¹ ἴστασθαι.
2. ὄφελον τὸν σου υἱὸν ἐπίστασθαι τὸ παλτὸν εἶναι.
3. εἴμεθα ὅμως κατὰ τοὺς ἐπὶ τῇ ἀμάξῃ ἰστάντας.
4. φασὶν τὸν Κῦρόν τοῦτο ἂν συνθέσθαι²⁰², εἰ αὐτὸν οὐδεὶς ἔτυχε ψευδόμενος.
5. εἶθε διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον ἐκάστῳ ἀνδρὶ τι διδοῖεν.

¹⁹⁹ For accent, see p. 198, note 4.

²⁰⁰ κρατεῖν could take a genitive object as well: τῶν ἐναντίων.

²⁰¹ For the use of ἂν, see §216, p. 114.

²⁰² LS, entry for συντίθημι, B.2, p. 780

Lesson LXVII *τιμῶν*. **Review of the Genitive****Section 422 Exercises**

a) Translate:

1. But certainly he asked if that device was not a concern to them²⁰³.
2. Having heard the trumpet²⁰⁴ they rushed upwards along the apparent road.
3. Although he was well-disposed, he did not begin the speech, which they desired.
4. Since the archon has died, they are contriving how they will attain the peace.
5. When they came again to the court they asked for the four months' pay that was due²⁰⁵.
6. They request of you even this, to distribute to each of the Greeks what they deserve.
7. On account of these [deeds], therefore, Cyrus was more honored by the Persians than [was] his brother.

b) Write in Greek:

1. πέντε ἐτῶν²⁰⁶ ἀποδώσει τὸ μείζον μέρος τῶν χρημάτων.
2. ἡ ἡμῶν ἐλπίς τῆς τιμῆς ὑπὸ τῶν ῥητόρων ἐλύθη.
3. τοῦ κινδύνου μεγίστου ὄντος, οἱ ὀλίγοι Ἕλληνες τῶν πολλῶν βαρβάρων ἀμείνους ἦσαν.
4. τὸ ὕδωρ τοῦ ξύλου τοῦ τῆς πύλης οὐχ ἄπτεται.
5. οἱ φυγάδες εἶχον ἕξ ἡμερῶν ἐπιτήδεια.

²⁰³ Smyth, §1467 "The dative of the person and the genitive of the thing are used with the impersonals *δεῖ...μέτεστι, μέλει, μεταμέλει, προσήκει*."

²⁰⁴ Partitive genitive (§275).

²⁰⁵ The translation attempts to reflect the difference between *ἀπαιτέω* ("ask back, ask for what is due") and *αἰτέω* ("ask for", "demand").

²⁰⁶ Time within which the debt will be repaid.

Section 423 The Earliest Exploration Party On Record

The Nasamonians, when they had arrived, were asked whether they had anything more to say concerning the Libyan desert. They said that there were sons of their rulers who, having come of age²⁰⁷, were planning some other unusual [escapades] and, in fact, sent five of themselves in order to view²⁰⁸ the Libyan desert, and [to see] if they might see something more than those who had [already] seen the farthest. For the [parts²⁰⁹] of Libya along the northern sea, starting from Egypt up to Cape Soloeis, which ends Libya, stretch along²¹⁰ all of Libya, except so much as the Greeks and Phoenicians hold. The [parts] both above²¹¹ the sea and [above] the parts along the sea [where] men belong, is the "wild Libya". The [parts] above the wild [part] is sand and dreadfully dry and empty of all things.

When, therefore, the youths (the ones sent out by their associates) came first through the inhabited country, they crossed this [country] and arrived in the wild area, [and] from there they were making their way through the wild country toward the west wind. They crossed a large, sandy country [and] after many days they saw where there were trees in the plain. And, when they had approached [the trees] they were picking the fruit that was on the trees. While they were picking [the fruit] small men approached them, smaller than medium[sized] men. [These men] seized them and lead them away. The Nasamonians neither recognized the speech of these [men] nor [did] those leading [them away recognize the speech] of the Nasamonians. They lead them [the Nasamonians] into a city in which all were like those who were leading them, dark in complexion. A great river flowed next to the city, flowing from out of the West toward the rising sun, [and] crocodiles appeared in it.

-- Adapted from Herodotus, *Histories*, 2.32.

²⁰⁷ masc. nom. plur., aor. pass. part. of ἀνδρόω.

²⁰⁸ Fut. part. of ὀράω, to express purpose.

²⁰⁹ μέρη is understood.

²¹⁰ The subject of παρήκουσι (3rd pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of παρήκω) is τὰ [μέρη], at the beginning of this sentence.

²¹¹ Herodotus seems to be using ὑπέρ + Genitive to denote the direction "South". He may also have in mind that this area is above sea-level.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson LXVIII οἶδα. Review Of The Dative**Section 429 Exercises**

a) Translate:

1. If he should conquer he would know as many men as it is necessary to honor.
2. Tissaphernes thought that Cyrus, in making war, wasted [time] around the camp.
3. In this village he passes a message to Clearchus to come, when he had taken as large an army as he had²¹².
4. Then will it be impossible for us, after we have conquered with force, to pass by?
5. But those outside will not escape by stealth²¹³; for I know where they are fleeing.
6. So, as a result, they were vexed with them since they knew this a long time ago.
7. After the victory he honored with very beautiful gifts those who had been helpful.
8. Of all those whom we know he was, by far, the most kingly.

b) Write in Greek:

1. φασὶν εἶναι πολλῶ μικρότεραν βίαν τῷ σατράπῃ.
2. ταύτῃ τῇ μηχανῇ τὸν τάφρον χρητὴν ἡμῖν διαβῆναι.
3. ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμάχοντο πλῆθει τῶν πολεμίων.
4. διὰ τὴν αὐτῶν φιλίαν οἱ Ἕλληνες τοὺς φυγάδας μεγάλην σπουδὴν ὠφέλησαν.
5. ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῖς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ εὖνους ἦν.

Section 430 The Prayer Of Socrates

O beloved Pan, and as many other gods [as are here], may you grant that I become beautiful within²¹⁴. As many external things as I have – may they be dear to the things inside me. May I think the wise man to be wealthy. May I have²¹⁵ as large a quantity of gold as a sane man might be able to carry and manage.

-- Plato, *Phaedrus*.

²¹² Message to Clearchus: "Take as large an army as you have and come here".

²¹³ Some older versions of CS have "ἀποδεδράκασιν" in sentence 5. This verb is 3rd pers. pl.; perf. ind. act. of ἀποδιδράσκω, ἀποδράσσομαι, ἀποδέδρακα. This verb is not common, but is attested several times in the *Anabasis*. According to *LS*, in Xenophon the verb is used for a soldier deserting. "Run away or run off, esp. by stealth". See *LS*, entry for ἀποδιδράσκω, p. 97. The current version of CS, published by Bolchazy-Carducci, shows ἀποδραμοῦνται instead of ἀποδεδράκασιν. ἀποδραμοῦνται is simply the future of ἀποτρέχω.

²¹⁴ Lit. "in respect to the things within".

²¹⁵ Lit., "might there be to me"

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 431 The Retort Courteous!

A certain philosopher was asked by Dionysius the tyrant why the philosophers come to the doors of the wealthy, but, on the other hand, the wealthy never come to the doors of the philosophers. He said: "Because the former know what they are in need of, the latter do not".

-- Diogenes Laertius, *Lives of the Eminent Philosophers* 2.69 (*Life of Aristippus*)

Section 432 In Praise Of Eros

Whoever does not judge Eros to be a great god,
and the most exalted of the spirits,
is either awkward or inexperienced with beauty,
and he does not know the god so very much greater than men.

-- Euripides, Fragment

Section 433 Lovely Woman

Nature gave horns to bulls,
hooves to horses,
speed to rabbits,
the chasm of teeth to lions,
brains to men.
But she had nothing more to give to women.
Why? Beauty²¹⁶ she gives
instead of all shields, all spears.
For being beautiful one conquers
both steel and fire.

--Anacreon²¹⁷

²¹⁶ κάλλος, -ους, τό

²¹⁷ To eliminate confusion, it should be noted that this poem is formatted into two columns on the page in CS. The lines in the right column should be read after the lines in the left.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

Lesson LXIX εἶμι Review of the Accusative**Section 439 Exercises**

a) Translate:

1. Then did we not use pieces of wood for shields?
2. For this, then, I blame you, that you did not allow them to go into the formation.
3. And going to the headquarters they asked Cyrus for [their] pay.
4. They were even trying to extend the trench up through the plain for twelve parasangs.
5. They arrived at a prosperous city, Soli by name²¹⁸.
6. He will suspect that the seer has certain hopes.
7. He dispatches the herald towards the king [by] the quickest way²¹⁹.
8. And, at the same time, the five generals – their heads cut off²²⁰ – died.

b) Write in Greek:

1. πάντες δ' ἴσασιν²²¹ τὸν βασιλέα νικῶντα καλὴν νίκην.
2. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξήλασε τέτταρας στάθμους παρασάγγας ἕξ καὶ εἴκοσι πρὸς ἔρημὴν πόλιν.
3. οἱ πολῖται ἄρχοντα αἰρούμενοι αὐτὸν τῖμῶσι μεγάλην τῖμην.
4. τί οἱ ἐχθροὶ τὸν ἄνδρον ἠδίκησαν;
5. οἱ παῖδες ἐπειρῶντο αὐτὸ πρᾶξαι τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν.

Section 440 A Good Loser

There Cyrus, having summoned Silanus the Ambraciot soothsayer, gave him 3,000 darics because, on the eleventh day before²²² this, while sacrificing, he [Silanus] told him that the king would not fight within 10 days. Cyrus then replied, "He will not ever fight, if he will not fight within these [10] days. If you have spoken the truth²²³, I promise you ten talents. This money he then paid over, since the 10 days were past.

-- Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.7.18

²¹⁸ CS, p. 144, note 2: this is an example of the accusative of respect.

²¹⁹ Adverbial accusative, §270, p. 142.

²²⁰ ἀποτμήντες is masc. nom. pl.; aor. pass. part. of ἀποτέμνω. τὰς κεφαλὰς is accusative of respect. See LS, entry for ἀποτέμνω, def. 2, p. 108.

²²¹ Smyth, §2139. οἶδα and ἐπίσταμαι, when used with the participle, signify "know that something is".

When used with the infinitive, they signify "know how to do something".

²²² πρότερον

²²³ Note aorist subjunctive ἀληθείσης in the protasis of a future-more-vivid, with ὑπισχνούμαι (referring to the future, so equivalent to a future indicative) in the apodosis.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Section 441 One Adventure Among Many

We reached the water, and again, in like manner, having set down the boat we sailed until we stopped at a great chasm which was separated from the water, just as we often see fissures in the earth that are caused by earthquakes. Now the ship, though we had taken down the sails, did not easily stop [but] almost²²⁴ went down. We, having leaned over, see how great [was] the very fearful depth – 1000 stades. For the water stood just as it had been divided. Looking about, we see on the right a bridge that had been made from the water, for the water was flowing on its surface, from the one sea to the other.

-- Adapted from Lucian of Samosata, *True History*, 2.43.

²²⁴ παρ' ὀλίγον: See *LS*, definition of ὀλίγος, IV:9, p. 552.

Lesson LXX Similarities In Form -- εἰμί, εἶμι, ἴημι**Study Notes: Parallel Inflections of εἰμί, εἶμι, ἴημι**

Present and Future Systems: εἰμί, εἶμι, ἴημι				
	εἰμί	εἶμι	ἴημι	
	Active	Active	Active	Middle/Passive
Pres. Ind.	εἰμί	εἶμι	ἴημι	ἴεμαι
	εἶ	εἶ	ἴης, ἴεις	ἴεσαι
	ἐστί	εἶσι	ἴησι	ἴεται
	ἐσμέν	ἴμεν	ἴεμεν	ἴεμεθα
	ἐστέ	ἴτε	ἴετε	ἴεσθε
	εἰσὶ	ἴασι	ἴασι	ἴενται
Imperf. Ind	ἦ, ἦν	ἦα, ἦειν	ἴην	ἴεμην
	ἦς	ἦεις, ἦεισθα	ἴεις	ἴεσο
	ἦν	ἦει, ἦειν	ἴει	ἴετο
	ἦμεν	ἦμεν	ἴεμεν	ἴεμεθα
	ἦστέ, ἦτε	ἦτε	ἴετε	ἴεσθε
	ἦσαν	ἦσαν, ἦεσαν	ἴεσαν	ἴεντο
Fut. Ind.	ἔσομαι		ἦσω	ἦσομαι
	ἔσῃ, ἔσει		ἦσεις	ἦσῃ, ἦσει
	ἔσται		ἦσει	ἦσεται
	ἔσόμεθα		ἦσομεν	ἦσόμεθα
	ἔσεσθε		ἦσετε	ἦσεσθε
	ἔσονται		ἦσουσι	ἦσονται
Pres. Subj.	ῶ	ἴω	ἴῶ	ἴῶμαι
	ῶς	ἴης	ἴῆς	ἴῆ
	ῶ	ἴη	ἴῆ	ἴῆται
	ῶμεν	ἴωμεν	ἴῶμεν	ἴῶμεθα
	ῶτε	ἴητε	ἴῆτε	ἴῆσθε
	ῶσι	ἴωσι	ἴῶσι	ἴῶνται

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Present and Future Systems: εἰμί, εἶμι, ἴημι				
	εἰμί	εἶμι	ἴημι	
	Active	Active	Active	Middle/Passive
Pres. Opt.	εἶην	ἴοιμι, ἴοίην	ἰείην	ἰείμην
	εἶης	ἴοις	ἰείης	ἰείο
	εἶη	ἴοι	ἰείη	ἰείτο
	εἶημεν, εἶμεν	ἴοιμεν	ἰείημεν, ἰείμεν	ἰείμεθα
	εἶητε, εἶτε	ἴοιτε	ἰείητε, ἰείτε	ἰείσθε
	εἶησαν, εἶεν	ἴοιεν	ἰείησαν, ἰείεν	ἰείντο
Fut. Opt.	ἔσοίμην		ἦσοιμι	ἦσοίμην
	ἔσοιο		ἦσοις	ἦσοιο
	ἔσοιτο		ἦσοι	ἦσοιτο
	ἔσοίμεθα		ἦσοιμεν	ἦσοίμεθα
	ἔσεσθε		ἦσοιτε	ἦσοισθε
	ἔσαιντο		ἦσοιεν	ἦσαιντο
Pres. Imper.	ἴσθι	ἴθι	ἴει	ἴεσο
	ἔστω	ἴτω	ἰέτω	ἰέσθω
	ἔστε	ἴτε	ἴετε	ἴεσθε
	ἔστων	ἴόντων	ἰέντων	ἰέσθων
Pres. Inf.	εἶναι	ἰέναι	ἰέναι	ἴεσθαι
Pres. Part.	ὄν, οὔσα, ὄν	ἴων, ἴουσα, ἴον	ἰείς, ἰείσα, ἰέν	ἰέμενος, -η -ον
Fut. Inf.	ἔσεσθαι		ἦσειν	ἦσεσθαι
Fut. Part.	ἔσόμενος, -η, -ον		ἦσων, ἦσουσα, ἦσον	ἦσόμενος, -η, -ον

2 nd Aorist System of ἴημι		
	Active	Middle
2 nd Aor. Ind.	ἦκα	εἶμην
	ἦκας	εἶσο
	ἦκε	εἶτο
	εἶμεν	εἶμεθα
	εἶτε	εἶσθε
	εἶσαν	εἶντο
2 nd Aor. Subj.	ῶ	ῶμαι
	ῆς	ῆ
	ῆ	ῆται
	ῶμεν	ῶμεθα
	ῆτε	ῆσθε
	ῶσι	ῶνται
2 nd Aor. Opt.	εἶην	εἶμην
	εἶης	εἶο
	εἶη	εἶτο
	εἶημεν, εἶμεν	εἶμεθα
	εἶητε, εἶτε	εἶσθε
	εἶησαν, εἶεν	εἶντο
2 nd Aor. Imper.	ἔς	οὔ
	ἔτω	ἔσθω
	ἔτε	ἔσθε
	ἔντων	ἔσθων
2 nd Aor. Inf.	εἶναι	ἔσθαι
2 nd Aor. Part.	εἶς, εἶσα, ἔν	ἔμενος, -η, -ον

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 444

Exercises

a) Locate these forms:

Inflected Verb	Form	Verb Form Is From
εἴη	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. opt. act.	εἶμι
εἴη	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. opt. act.	ἴημι
παρείη	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. opt. act. 3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. opt. act. ²²⁵	πάρειμι (εἶμι) παρίημι
ἄπειην	1 st pers. sing.; pres. opt. act.	ἄπειμι (εἶμι)

ἀφείην	1 st pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. opt. act.	ἀφίημι
ἦμεν	1 st pers. pl.; imperf. ind. act.	εἶμι
ἦμεν	2 nd pers. pl.; imperf. ind. act.	εἶμι
ἴη	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. subj. act. 2 nd pers. sing.; pres. subj. mid.	ἴημι ἴημι
ἴη	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. subj. act.	εἶμι
ἀφίης	2 nd pers. sing.; pres. subj. act.	ἀφίημι
ἴης	2 nd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. subj. act.	ἴημι
ἴης	2 nd pers. sing.; imperf. ind. act.	εἶμι
ἦσαν	3 rd pers. pl.; 2 nd pluperf. ind. act. 3 rd pers. pl.; imperf. ind. act.	οἶδα εἶμι
ἦσαν	3 rd pers. pl.; imperf. ind. act.	εἶμι
εἶσαν	3 rd pers. pl.; 2 nd aor. ind. act.	ἴημι
ἴεσαν	3 rd pers. pl.; imperf. ind. act.	ἴημι
ἀπιέναι	pres. inf. act.	ἄπειμι (εἶμι)
ἀφιέναι	pres. inf. act.	ἀφίημι
ἀφεῖναι	2 nd aor. inf. act.	ἀφίημι

²²⁵ N.B.: The 3rd pers. sing.; pres. opt. act. of πάρειμι (εἶμι) is παρίοι.

ἀπειλῆναι	pres. inf. act.	ἄπειμι (εἰμί)
εἰδέσθαι	2 nd perf. inf. act.	οἶδα
ἰδεῖν	2 nd aor. inf. act.	ὄραω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἐόρακα (ἐώρακα), ἐώραμαι(ώμμαι), ὄφθην
ἔσ	2 nd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. imper. act.	ἔημι
εἶς	masc. nom. sing.; 2 nd aor. part. act.	ἔημι
εἶς	masc. nom. sing.	εἶς, μία, ἕν

ἴθι	2 nd pers. sing.; pres. imp. act.	εἶμι
ἴσθι	2 nd pers. sing.; 2 nd perf. imper. act. 2 nd pers. sing.; pres. imper. act.	οἶδα εἰμί
ἔστω	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. imper. act.	εἰμί
ἴτω	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. imper. act.	εἶμι
ἔτω	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. imper. act.	ἔημι
ἴστω	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd perf. imper. act.	οἶδα
ἴστω̄	1 st pers. sing.; pres. subj. act.	ἴστημι
ἴέτω	3 rd pers. sing.; pres. imper. act.	ἔημι
εἰδῆ	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd perf. subj. act.	οἶδα
ἴδῃ	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. subj. act. or 2 nd pers. sing; 2 nd aor. subj. middle/pass.	ὄραω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἐόρακα (ἐώρακα), ἐώραμαι(ώμμαι), ὄφθην
ἴσῃ	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. subj. act. or 2 nd pers. sing; 2 nd aor. subj. middle/pass.	ἴστημι
στῆ	3 rd pers. sing.; 2 nd aor. subj. act.	ἴστημι
ἴσῃ	3 rd pers. sing.; imperf. act. ind. (because of augmented	ἴστημι

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	ι)	
ἴστη	2 nd pers. sing.; pres. imper. act.	ἴστημι
παρεῖτε	2 nd pers. pl.; 2 nd aor. ind. act. 2 nd pers. pl.; 2 nd aor. opt. act. 2 nd pers. pl.; pres. opt. act.	παρίημι παρίημι πάρεμι (εἰμί)
εἶτε	2 nd pers. pl.; 2 nd aor. ind. act. 2 nd pers. pl.; 2 nd aor. opt. act.	ἴημι ἴημι
εἶτε	2 nd pers. pl.; pres. opt. act.	εἰμί
ἔσεσθε	2 nd pers. pl.; fut. ind. mid.	εἰμί
εἴσεσθαι	fut. inf. mid.	εἰμί
εἰδώς	masc. nom. sing.; 2 nd perf. part. act.	οἶδα
ιδών	masc. nom. sing.; 2 nd aor. part. act.	ὀράω, ὀφθαίμαι, εἶδον, ἐόρακα (ἐώρακα), ἐώραμαι(ώμμαι), ὤφθη
εἰδῶ	1 st pers. sing.; perf. subj. act.	οἶδα
ἴασι	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. ind. act.	ἴημι
ἴασι	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. ind. act.	εἶμι
ἴστωσι	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. subj. act.	ἴστημι
ἴστωσι	3 rd pers. pl.; pres. ind. act.	ἴστημι

b) Write in Greek:

1. εἰσί, ἴασι, ἴασι.
2. ἐὰν ὁ μάντις σοφὸς ᾗ, εὐθὺς εἶσι.
3. ὁ ξένος οὐκ ᾔδει σὲ ἔντα²²⁶ δεύτερον λίθον.
4. ἐν τάξει ἦσθα ἐπεὶ παρήει;

²²⁶ See footnote 131.

Section 445 Poetry Pays

Some of the captured Athenians in Sicily²²⁷ were saved through Euripides.²²⁸ For the Sicilians were especially fond of him²²⁹. Therefore, as many as were saved went in thanks to Euripides, because, although enslaved they had been freed since they had taught [the Syracusans] as much of his poetry as they remembered. In fact, they say that one time the Syracusans did not allow the Caunians (who were being chased) to enter the harbor. But when they found out that they knew poems of Euripides, [they allowed them] to come alongside [the quay] and restore their boat.

-- Adapted from Plutarch, *Nicias*, 29:2-3.

Section 446 οἶνος καὶ ἀλήθεια

Come here so that you may become wiser!
 Do you know about mortal affairs – what nature they have?
 I think²³⁰ not. How could you? But listen to me.
 To die is [a debt] owed by all mortals,
 and no mortal knows if he is going to be living tomorrow.
 For it is invisible whither Chance advances,
 and it cannot be learned, nor captured by craft.
 Thus, once you have heard and learned from me,
 enjoy yourself, drink, count each day as your life,
 but [count] the rest as Chances'.
 Honor the Cyprian²³¹ as the sweetest of the gods to mortals,
 For the goddess is kindly.
 Let the rest be, and obey my words, if I seem to you to speak correctly.

-- Euripides, *Alcestis*, 779-793.

²²⁷ Refers to the disastrous attempt to take Sicily during the Peloponnesian War. Nicias, the subject of the biography by Plutarch from which this reading is taken, was a leading Athenian politician who had (421 b.c.) negotiated a 50-year truce with Sparta after the first 10 years of the war had ended in stalemate. However, in 415 b.c., his opponent, Alcibiades, had convinced the Athenians to attack the Greek cities on Sicily (of which Syracuse was the most important) to bring them into the Athenian Empire. The expedition ended in disaster, with the Athenian army destroyed and most of the fleet captured at Syracuse in 413 b.c. This defeat left Athens' military power in shambles. Athens weakness prompted a resumption of the Peloponnesian War by Sparta, joined by Persia. Athens was eventually defeated in 404 b.c.

²²⁸ However, most of the captured Athenians, having been put to forced labor in the mines, perished of malnutrition, exposure or disease, as Plutarch reported just before this selection begins.

²²⁹ That is, were fond of his poetry.

²³⁰ οἶμαι is contracted from οἴομαι: "think", "imagine". *LS*, entry for οἶμαι, p. 547.

²³¹ That is, as Crosby and Schaeffer point out, Aphrodite.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson LXXI *Inflection of δείκνυμι*

Section 449 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. He appointed him general of all – as many as are collected in the plain of Castolus.
2. But, all the same, a bridge was at hand, yoked by 100 boats²³².
3. Certain people said that these soldiers (who had been left behind) perished.
4. Having been struck above the eye, he died.
5. Having recovered the dead they swear a great oath that they will bury [them].
6. They are glad to prove²³³ that they are much better than the barbarians.
7. Then might you not be afraid that he would destroy the cattle?
8. I order you to show us where the 20 ships are.
9. And keep this in mind: if you were not taking an oath somewhere [regarding] these matters, we would not trust you.

b) Write in Greek:

1. αὐτόν δ' ἡγεμόνα ἀποδεικνύασι διὰ τὴν ἀρετὴν.
2. ὁ ἀνὴρ μέγαν ὄρκον ὄμνῦσιν ἐπιθήσειν δίκην τοῖς ἐχθροῖς.
3. οὐ δυνάμενοι τὴν ὁδὸν εὐρεῖν ὁ λοχαγὸς ἀπώλετο.
4. πᾶση τέχνῃ πειρῶνται τὸν ποταμὸν ζεύξαι.

²³² i.e., it was a pontoon bridge, with the roadway laid upon the decks of 100 boats linked together.

²³³ For this use of a supplementary participle with ἥδομαι, see §393b, p. 213, and *LS*, entry for ἥδομαι, p. 348.

Section 450 No Match For Socrates

For Hippias arrived and approached Socrates, who was saying that it was amazing that if someone wished to be taught some trade, he is not at a loss where to go to learn it²³⁴, but, should he wish to be taught Justice, then he is at a loss. When Hippias heard this, he, as if he were mocking him, said: "Yet are you, Socrates, still saying these same things which I once, a long time ago, heard from you? And Socrates said "But what is stranger than this, Hippias, not only do I always say the same things but even [talk] about the same [topics]²³⁵. [But] you, being so learned, perhaps never say the same things concerning the same [topics]."

"Certainly", he [Hippias] said. "I try, always, to say something new."

"Even²³⁶", said [Socrates], "about that which you know? For such sort [of question] concerning letters, if some were asking you how many and what sort [of letters] there are [in the word] 'Socrates', you would try to say, first one [answer] and now another? Or do you not reply to those who ask [questions] about numbers – if [for instance] two times five is ten – the same [answer] now as before?"

"About these [questions], Socrates²³⁷", he said.

Section 452 Carry On!

I am the tomb of a shipwrecked sailor. But you sail [on].
For even when we have been lost, the remaining ships sail the seas.

²³⁴ Lit. "he is not at a loss whither, going, he might learn it."

²³⁵ The sense of this sentence is more clear if it is punctuated: "...οὐ μόνον ἀεὶ τὰ αὐτὰ λέγω, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν." On the use of αὐτός with the article to mean "same", see §70, p. 40.

²³⁶ πότερον normally introduces an interrogative sentence that gives two alternatives. For the usage here, see *LS*, entry for πότερος, α, ον, II.3, p. 664: "the second alternative is sometimes left to be supplied".

²³⁷ The text of this passage appears to have been cut off rather abruptly by Crosby and Schaeffer. The entire sentence, of which *CS* give us only the first six words, is "περὶ μὲν τούτων, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὥσπερ σύ, καὶ ἐγὼ ἀεὶ τὰ αὐτὰ λέγω": " 'Concerning these questions, Socrates,' he said, 'just like you, even I, always, give the same answer.' " Perhaps *CS* intend the fragment they give to be translated as "I agree, Socrates".

Lesson LXXII Aorist of γιγνώσκω

Section 455 Sound Advice

"Knowing yourself" is this: [that] you would know what your business is and what you must do.

-- Menander, fragment.

Section 456 The Six-Hour Day

Six hours is most sufficient for hard work²³⁸. The ones that follow, as the letters show, say "live" to mortals.

-- Greek Anthology.

Section 457 As A Flower Of The Field

- Menippus: Where are the beautiful and the brave, Hermes? Point them out to me.
- Hermes: I don't have time, Menippus. But look at that, on the right, where Hyacinthus is, and Narcissus and Achilles and Tyro and Helen and Leda and altogether all the ancient beauties²³⁹.
- Menippus: I see only bones and skulls bare of flesh, and many similar things.
- Hermes: And, in fact, that one is she at whom all the poets marvel, whom you, a little bit ago, thought worthy.
- Menippus: All the same, show me Helen, for I have not been able to make her out.
- Hermes: This skull is Helen.
- Menippus: Then, on account of this, the thousand ships were sent from all of Greece, and so many Greeks and barbarians fell, and so many cities were overturned?
- Hermes: But did you not see the living woman, Menippus? For even you would say that it is not surprising to suffer pains for a long time for such a woman.
- Menippus: But still I wonder at this, Hermes: if the Achaeans did not understand, while they were struggling about this "business"²⁴⁰, how short-term and fading [it was].
- Lucian, *Dialogues of the Dead*, 18.

²³⁸ The author of this *Study Guide* tries to follow this wise advice.

²³⁹ Note that the word κάλλη is the neuter nominative plural of κάλλος, -ους, τό: "beauty"

²⁴⁰ Referring to Helen.

Section 459 Exercise

Write in Greek:

1. Γνώθι σαῦτον.
2. ἐκεῖνο γνούς, οὐκ ἂν ἐπόνησε ὡς ἰσχυρότερα.
3. ὁ βασιλεὺς εἶτα ἔγνω τὴν πόλιν ἡρημένην.
4. οὐκ ἔστιν μοι σχολὴ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἀποβλέψαι²⁴¹.

²⁴¹ For use of infinitive of purpose, see *Smyth* §2010. See *LS*, entry for ἀποβλέπω, p. 95, for use of πρὸς + acc. as the direct object of ἀποβλέπω.

Lesson LXXIII Inflection Of δηλόω**Study Notes: Summary of Verb/Vowel Contraction Rules**

- Verbs in **-εω**
 - ε + ω ⇒ ω
 - ε + ο, ε + ου ⇒ ου
 - ε + ε ⇒ ει
 - For tenses other than those in the present system, the characteristic final ε of the present stem is lengthened to η
- Verbs in **-αω**
 - α + an ο sound (ο, ω, ου, οι) ⇒ ω (ω)
 - α + an ε sound (ε, η, ει, η) ⇒ ᾶ (α)
 - an ι in the uncontracted form becomes an ι subscript in the contracted form.
 - For tenses other than those in the present system, the characteristic final α of the present stem is lengthened to η.
- Verbs in **-οω**
 - ο + ε, ο + ο, ο + ου ⇒ ου
 - ο + η, ο + ω ⇒ ω
 - ο + ι-diphthong (ει, οι, η) ⇒ οι
 - For tenses other than those in the present system, the characteristic final ο of the present stem is lengthened to ω.
- If the *initial* vowel being contracted (-ε, -α, -ο) is accented, the resulting contraction bears a circumflex accent. Examples:
 - τῆμάω ⇒ τῆμῶ
 - φιλέουσι ⇒ φιλοῦσι
 - but δηλοέτω ⇒ δηλούτω, φιλεέτω ⇒ φιλείτω, τιμαέτω ⇒ τιμᾶτω (3rd pers. sing.; pres. imper. act)

Section 464 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Thus he showed again that he would not betray them, not even if they were not much weaker in number.
2. It seemed best to them to demand more pay.
3. So, as a result, they expected²⁴² that he would not willingly deceive him.
4. Setting out on the direct road he took possession of everything that he wished.
5. They would not have been easily defeated if the sun had not been eclipsed²⁴³.
6. If, therefore, he were to make a journey and a great number²⁴⁴ were expecting to come in to see him, he would summon the well-intentioned and would converse [with them] earnestly, so that he might show whom he honored.
7. And, then, whatever he saw that each [person] especially needed, he would, clearly, try to provide it.
8. If he deceives the king, I fear that he might demand to kill the Greeks.

b) Write in Greek:

1. ὀρμώμενοι εἰς τὴν κώμην ἔκοντες.
2. ἡττηθέντες ὑπὸ τοῦ μικροῦ κράτους, δῆλοι ἦσαν κακοὶ ὄντες.
3. ἀξίου ὅτι δοκεῖ, ἵνα πορευόμενος μὴ ἀπολλύοιο.
4. εἰ καὶ ἐξηπάτηται²⁴⁵, ὅμως δὲ οὐκ ἔδαπάνησε πάντα τὰ χρήματα.

²⁴² For this translation of *ἔξιλον*, see entry for *ἀξιόω* in the "Greek-English Vocabulary" at the end of *CS*.

²⁴³ For this intransitive use of *ἐκλείπω*, see *LS*, entry for *ἐκλείπω* ii. This verb can also mean "to fail" or "to die".

²⁴⁴ *πλεῖστοι*

²⁴⁵ For use of *εἰ καὶ* + indicative in a concessive clause, see *Smyth* §2375. Alternatively, one might say "*καίπερ ἐξηπατημένος, ὅμως δὲ οὐκ ἔδαπάνησε τὰ πάντα χρήματα.*" (*Smyth*, §2382).

Section 465 "The Sea! The Sea!"

From there they marched through [the land of] the Chalybians, who were the most warlike [people] of those that they passed through. When the Greeks would encounter them, they would always follow and fight them. From there they [the Greeks] reached a large and prosperous city, the ruler of which sent a guide to the Greeks. When he arrived, that one [the guide] said that he would [literally, "will"] lead them for five days into a country from which they would [literally, "will"] see the sea.

And they arrive, on the fifth day, at a mountain. When the first [of the Greeks] reached the mountain, there was a great shout. Xenophon and the rear guard, hearing this, thought that the others at the front were attacking the enemy. When the shouting increased and came nearer, those coming up were all running towards those who were shouting, and the noise became much greater as the number increased, it was clear to Xenophon that something important was going on. He mounted a horse and, leading the cavalry was going to render aid. And right away they heard the shouting of the soldiers: "The sea! The sea!". Then all began to run – the rear guard and the pack animals and the horses [all] moved out.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 4.7.15-24.

Section 466 Shadow Or Substance

A youth hired an ass. When the sun became hot, he asked to sit down beneath the shade that the ass made [literally, "beneath the shade of the ass"]. Accordingly, the man who had rented him [the ass] prevented him, saying that he had hired him the ass, not its shade. The youth said that, since he had rented the ass he had also rented the shade. While they were battling over this the ass deserted them.

-- Adapted from Aesop, 339.

Lesson LXXIV**Summary of Participial Forms****Section 471****A Grumbler Shamed**

And there was a great shout, as the Greek army was encouraging²⁴⁶ their comrades, and [there was] a great shout [from] those around Tissaphernes as they were encouraging their comrades. Xenophon, riding along [the line of battle] on his horse, urged them on: "Men, now think about racing to Greece, about your children and wives. Now [think about], after having toiled a little, travelling the remaining road peacefully."

But Soteridas the Sicyonian replied: "We are not on an equality, Xenophon. For you travel on a horse, but I suffer severely carrying this shield."

When he had heard this, and had jumped down from the horse, he [Xenophon] pushes him out of the formation and, having taken away his shield, carrying it he marched as swiftly as he was able. And, in fact, he happened to be wearing [also] the calvaryman's breastplate. Thus burdened, he encouraged those in front to hurry, [and] those in back [of him] to pass by, since he was following with difficulty. The other soldiers struck and threw [things] and taunted Soteridas until they compelled him, once he had taken up his shield, to march [on]. But he [Xenophon], having mounted, led them on horseback as long as it was possible²⁴⁷. When it was no longer possible, having abandoned the horse, he ran forward on foot. And they beat the enemy to the summit.

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 3.4.45-49

Section 472**Exercise**

Write in Greek:

1. πεζός τις ἀπελθὼν²⁴⁸ ἔλαθε.
2. ὀπλιζόμενοι ἐπύθοντο²⁴⁹ τὸν ἄρχοντα ἐαυτῶν τετραμένον.
3. ἀπολεσαμένων ὀλίγων, ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπώρησε.
4. οἱ τετραμένοι ἤδη πολλοὶ γενόμενοι τυγχάνουσι.
5. ἐπάυσато πῶν τῶν ἐαυτοῦ φίλων φανομένων.

²⁴⁶ See *LS*, entry for διακελεύομαι 2, p. 188 "δ. ἀλλήλοισι Xen."

²⁴⁷ See *LS*, entry for οἶος, III:2, p. 549.

²⁴⁸ *Smyth*, §2096a: For the supplementary participle, not in indirect discourse, "the action of φθάνω and λανθάνω usually coincides with that of the supplementary participle (present with present, aorist with aorist)."

²⁴⁹ *Smyth*, §2110f: "Verbs signifying to see, perceive, hear, learn (i.e. learn by inquiry, hear of), when they denote physical (actual) perception take the participle."

Lesson LXXV Summary of Infinitive Forms And Uses

Section 476 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. They were attempting to beat their opponents in linking-up²⁵⁰ the wagons.
2. You will be responsible for plundering the palace.
3. But it will not be possible to take the hill, if you do not station the peltasts around the summit in a circle²⁵¹.
4. And whatever village they seized they found – every one – to be full of grain and wine, so that it wasn't necessary to buy provisions²⁵².
5. Before, however, they go into battle²⁵³, all the Persians arm themselves with breastplates, shields, and spears.
6. The summit is completely steep from all sides²⁵⁴, so that it isn't possible to use horses.
7. For he ordered the Greeks to put [down] their arms.
8. Then before he had marched more than three parasangs it was [possible] to see the horsemen.
9. They said that it was best to throw the spears into the harbor.

b) Write in Greek:

1. αὐτοῦ οἱ ἐναντίοι κωλύουσι αὐτὸν ἀφικνοῦντα τὰ βασίλεια.
2. ὁ λοχᾶγός κελεύσει τὰς πελταστὰς ἔτι εἶναι τὰ παλτά.
3. ὁ λόφος μεστὸς τῶν ἀνδρῶν πρὶν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἄρξασθαι²⁵⁵ ἐπιτιθέναι²⁵⁶.
4. οὐδεὶς οὕτω σοφὸς ἐστὶν ὥστε τὰ πάντα ἐπίστασθαι.
5. ὠφέλε²⁵⁷ ὁ λόφος μὴ εἶναι οὕτως ὄρθιος.

²⁵⁰ Smyth, §2096a: For the supplementary participle, not in indirect discourse, "the action of φθάνω and λαμβάνω usually coincides with that of the supplementary participle (present with present, aorist with aorist)."

²⁵¹ i.e., if you don't surround the summit with the peltasts, you won't take the hill.

²⁵² See CS §108: ὥστε + the infinitive shows a natural or probable result; ὥστε + the indicative shows actual result.

²⁵³ See CS §144(d): πρὶν, when used with the infinitive is translated "before".

²⁵⁴ This translation of κύκλω comes from LSJ, entry for κύκλος, 2 (adverbial uses of κύκλω): "around or from all sides", p. 1007.

²⁵⁵ Smyth, §2098 shows ἄρχομαι, **to begin**, with the supplementary participle. Ibid., §2128, states, however: "ἄρχομαι ... with part. (2098), begin to do something and continue with something else; with inf. (usually present, cp. 1865 b) begin to do something and continue with the same thing... ἄρχομαι with the participle occurs only in Xenophon and Plato." Therefore, the use of ἄρξασθαι with the infinitive, as above, seems to capture the sense of the English better than "ὁ λόφος μεστὸς τῶν ἀνδρῶν πρὶν δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἄρξασθαι ἐπιθέντες."

²⁵⁶ For the accent of ἐπιτιθέναι, see §535.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 477 "Heads, I Win; Tails, You Lose"

[The army of Cyrus is encamped near the city Thapsacus, on the Euphrates river. Cyrus has just informed the generals that he planned to march to Babylon to attack the Great King of Persia. He has directed the generals to explain this plan to the troops. In this passage, Menon is trying to convince his mercenaries to agree to follow Cyrus]

"What then do I order [you] to do? Now Cyrus begs²⁵⁸ the Greeks to follow [him] against the King of Persia²⁵⁹. But I say that you need to cross the Euphrates river before it's clear what the other Greeks will reply to Cyrus. For either it will seem best to them to follow [Cyrus], [and] you will appear to be responsible for beginning the crossing, or should the others decide against this, we will all go back²⁶⁰ again [to Greece] and whatever you might need, I know that you, as friends, will obtain²⁶¹ it from Cyrus."

-- Adapted from Xenophon, *Anabasis*, 1.4.14-15.

²⁵⁷ See *CS*, §411 b. For use of *μή* in a negative unattainable wish, and *λόφος* in the nominative case, see *Smyth* §1781.

²⁵⁸ *LS*, entry for *δέω*, II.2 [*δέομαι*], p. 181 "c. gen. pers. et inf. to beg a person to do".

²⁵⁹ *LS*, entry for *βασιλεύς*, III, p. 148, "after the Persian war, the king of Persia, was called *βασιλεύς* (without the Art.)"

²⁶⁰ *ἄπιμεν* is 1st pers. pl.; pres. ind. act. of *ἄπειμι*.

²⁶¹ For this use of *τυγχάνω* + gen., see *LS*, entry for *τυγχάνω*, II.2, p. 823, "gen. pers. added, to obtain a thing from a person".

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

Section 478 The Marriage Market

In each village, once each year, they do this: as many maidens as happen to be ripe for marriage, all these they lead into one spot, [and] around them stand many men. The auctioneer²⁶², having stood them up²⁶³, one by one, sells each [of them], first the prettiest of all; afterward, when she who had found a high price was sold, he puts up to auction another who is the prettiest after her. Whatever marriageable, wealthy, Babylonian men as there are, these, outdoing each other, buy out the prettiest. Then, all the common people who are marriageable get both²⁶⁴ money and the uglier virgins. When the auctioneer was through selling²⁶⁵ the prettiest of the virgins, he would present one who was very unshapely or crippled and put her up for auction. Whoever might wish to live with her, [after] he had purchased²⁶⁶ [her] for the least money, she [the virgin] would go to him. The money came from the pretty virgins, and, thus, the good-looking gave the ugly and crippled in marriage. It was not permitted for each [man] to give his own daughter in marriage to whomever he might wish.

-- Adapted from Herodotus, *Histories*, 1.196

²⁶² Lit. "herald".

²⁶³ ἀνιστάς is from ἀνίστημι.

²⁶⁴ τε καί

²⁶⁵ LS, entry for διεξέρχομαι, p. 200, 2.

²⁶⁶ LS, entry for λαμβάνω, II:6, p. 463.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Lesson LXXVI Summary Of Subjunctive Forms And Uses

Study Notes: Tenses and Moods in Object Clauses After Verbs of Fearing

Crosby & Schaeffer do not give a general rule for the tense of the subjunctive to be used after a verb of fearing, such as *φοβέω*. Neither does Smyth. Nor is it possible to declare, categorically, that the subjunctive is always used in object clauses when the verb of fearing is in a primary tense, and the optative when the main verb is in a secondary tense. However, based on *Smyth* §2221-§2239, it appears that the following guidelines are valid:

- The aorist is very common after *μή*, emphasizing its use as an indicator of aspect of the feared action (single occurrence vs. repeated) rather than time.
- The future is rare with verbs of fearing after *μή*.
- *ὅπως μή* is sometimes used, with the subjunctive or optative, following a verb of fearing to indicate the subject's concern that something *will* happen.
 - The examples in *Smyth* §2230 seem to show that the present tense of the subjunctive or optative indicates that the feared event is in the future.
- *ὅπως μή* with the future indicative can be used instead of *μή* with the subjunctive.
- Fear that something is happening or did happen is indicated by *μή* with the appropriate tense of the indicative. In these sentences, the tense indicates the time at which the object of fear takes/took place, as opposed to indicating aspect (§2233).

Section 482 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Therefore, let us burn the wagons and the provisions -- whatever we have no need of.
2. Do not deprive us, who are your friends, of our freedom²⁶⁷.
3. Would we go, all together, straight up against the peltasts?
4. They are, then, afraid that their own city would be besieged.
5. If you stop the din, they will find out that you are present.
6. Whoever willingly does Cyrus ill, he tries to punish.
7. If he wants to come upon water or grain, he will march as swiftly as possible.
8. I say this, then, so that you not be forced, for the future, to guard the man.
9. Do not think me [to be] general, if you do not wish to follow Cyrus.

b) Write in Greek:

1. τὴν πόλιν οὐκέτι πολιορκῶμεν, ἔαν ὁ ἄρχων μὴ ἡμῖν διδῶ τὸν μισθόν.
2. ἀεὶ τῆμιωρήσονται αὐτοὺς, οἵτινες ἂν κακὰ λέγωσι Κῦρον²⁶⁸.
3. αἱ γυναικὲς φοβοῦνται μὴ θόρυβός τις γένηται²⁶⁹.
4. οἱ τῶν τεθνηκότων φίλοι τὴν κώμην καύσονται ἵνα τῆμιωρήσονται.
5. τί²⁷⁰ λέγω τῇ βασιλείᾳ;

Section 483 A Friend In Need

Beloved Persuasion²⁷¹, present ally,
 Make these words that I speak to prosper.
 -- Menander, Fragment.

Section 484 The Beam That Is In Thine Own Eye

Whenever you are about to malign your neighbor about something,
 you, yourself, [should] first look at your own faults.
 -- Menander, Fragment.

²⁶⁷ ἀποστερέω can be followed by 1) the person deprived in the accusative and the thing the person is deprived of in the genitive OR 2) both the person and the thing can be in the accusative. *LS*, entry for ἀποστερέω, p. 107.

²⁶⁸ *LS*, entry for λέγω (c) 2, p. 467, "κακὰ λ. τινά".

²⁶⁹ For the use of the aorist subjunctive, see the pattern sentences at the beginning of *Smyth* §2225.

²⁷⁰ For the acute, rather than grave, accent on τί, see *CS* §164.

²⁷¹ Πειθοῖ is vocative of Πειθῶ, who is the personification of "persuasion".

Section 485 The Oath Of The Ephebi

I will not disgrace the sacred weapons, nor will I leave behind my comrade, whoever I may be standing beside in battle. And I will defend the temples and the holy places, both alone and with many [others]. I will hand over the fatherland not less, but larger and nobler than I inherited it. I will obey the judges and I will follow both the established laws and whatever other [laws] the commonwealth may establish. And should someone annul the laws, let me neither be won over nor allow [it], but I shall defend them [the laws] both alone and with all [others]. And I shall honor the holy religion of my fathers. The gods are witnesses of these things.

-- Stobaeus, *Florilegium*, 43, 48.

Section 486 The Forgiving Spirit

If your brother should do wrong, rebuke him. And if he repent, forgive²⁷² him. And if he sin 70 times in a day, and 70 times he turns to you, saying "I repent", you will forgive²⁷³ him.

-- Luke 17:3-4

²⁷² ἄφες is 2nd pers. sing; 2nd aor. imper. act. of ἀφίημι.

²⁷³ ἀφήσεις is 2nd pers. sing.; fut. ind. act. of ἀφίημι.

Lesson LXXVII Summary Of Optative Forms And Uses

Section 491 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. But if someone should harm him, he would exact vengeance²⁷⁴.
2. Then, accordingly, he asked whether it would be necessary to anticipate those familiar with purchasing the provisions.
3. Who, reflecting on these matters, would still really trust him?
4. Would that he give us a trustworthy leader!
5. If the width of the river should be three or four plethra, it would be necessary to use boats.
6. If someone should not treat his own [property] well, how would he not harm that of another?
7. We feared²⁷⁵ that he ["that one"] might give a signal to the king about the army.
8. She therefore said that the fugitives deposited²⁷⁶ their own money for themselves²⁷⁷.

b) Write in Greek:

1. εἰ γὰρ οὐδεὶς τοὺς παῖδας βλάπτει.
2. ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπε ὅτι τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶη.
3. τίς ἂν ἀποστεροίη ἡμῶν τὴν ἐλευθερίαν²⁷⁸;
4. ὥστε παῦσαι²⁷⁹ τὸν θόρυβον, ἐσήμηγε ἠλάσαι.
5. εἰ ἐνθυμοῖο εὖ ταῦτα, τὴν πόλιν οὐκ ἂν κᾶσις.

²⁷⁴ Past general condition: εἰ + optative in protasis; imperfect indicative in apodosis.

²⁷⁵ ἔδεδοίκεμεν is the 1st pers. pl.; pluperf. ind. act. of δέεισμαι (Attic equivalent of δέιδω). Since δέδοικα is used as the present in Attic, the pluperfect should correspond to a simple past tense.

²⁷⁶ LS, entry for κατατίθημι, II.5, p. 417: "to deposit in a place of safety, Id., Xen."

²⁷⁷ LS, entry for ἴδιος, 2, p. 175: "εἰς τὸ ἴδιον for oneself, Xen."

²⁷⁸ ἀποστερέω τινός τι or ἀποστερέω τινά τινος are both proper: see Smyth §1630 and 1394. This sentence, therefore, might also be rendered "τίς ἂν ἀποστεροίη ἡμᾶς τῆς ἐλευθερίας;". For similar sentence, see sentence 2 in CS §482 a), p. 259.

²⁷⁹ §108, natural or probable result. "In order [that he might] stop the noise, he gave the signal to march": "ἵνα παύσειε τὸν θόρυβον, ἐσήμηγε ἠλάσαι".

Section 492 During The Terror²⁸⁰

Having divided up the houses [that they would search] they set out. They arrested me as I was entertaining guests, and having driven them out they handed me over to Peiso²⁸¹. The others went into the factory²⁸² and seized the slaves. I was asking Peiso if he would be willing to save me – for a price. He said "If it would be a lot [of money]". So I said that I would be willing to give a talent of silver. He agreed that he would do this. I went into the bedroom and opened the chest. Peiso noticed [it] and came in, and seeing what was within he called two of his servants and ordered them to take what was inside. Since he had three talents of silver and much else, I begged him to give me money for the road. He said that I was fortunate if I save my body.

[Peiso then turned Lysias over to two of the tyrants, who take him to Damnippus' house, where some other democrats are being held. Peiso tells him not to be afraid, that he will return for Lysias, but Lysias clearly doubts Peiso's word. Peiso goes off. Lysias tells Damnippus, who seems to be the guard, that he is willing to pay to be freed. Damnippus goes to consult with his accomplice, Theognis. Since Lysias believes that, if he stays at the house of Damnippus he will be killed, he resolves to escape while Damnippus is occupied.]

Now, I happened to be acquainted with the house and knew that there were doors on both sides. I decided [Lit. "it seemed best"] to attempt to be saved in this way, for I thought that if I eluded them, I would be saved, but if I were taken²⁸³ I would be killed anyway. As a result, I fled, while they were guarding by the courtyard door²⁸⁴. There were three doors, which I needed to pass through, [and] all happened to be open.

-- Adapted from Lysias, *Orations* 12.8-16.

²⁸⁰ This speech is drawn from *Against Eratosthenes*, by the forensic orator Lysias (c. 459-c.380 B.C.). The passage is an interesting description of Lysias' experiences in the reign of terror caused by the oligarchs (called the "Thirty Tyrants") who, in alliance with the Spartans, imposed a reign of terror on Athens at the end of the Peloponnesian War (spring of 404 bc). Lysias and his brothers Polemarchus and Euthydemus, of Syracusan origin, had had a prosperous business in Piraeus, the port of Athens, making shields. In 404 the brothers were proscribed by the Thirty Tyrants. See *OCD*, articles on Lysias and Thirty Tyrants (1), p. 631; p. 1064.

²⁸¹ One of the Thirty Tyrants.

²⁸² Lysias' shield-making factory, where the labor was slave.

²⁸³ ληφθῶ is 1st pers. sing.; aor. subj. pass. of λαμβάνω.

²⁸⁴ This would be the front door of the house, which opened onto the courtyard in front of the house, and then on to the street. See Lysias, *Against Eratosthenes*, 12.16, available from The Perseus Project, <http://www.perseus.tufts.edu>, accessed 4/1/06, notes 1 and 2.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

Lesson LXXVIII Summary Of Imperative Forms And Uses

Section 497 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. But if anyone should transgress the laws, let him make amends.²⁸⁵
2. Therefore, lead the beasts of burden into the camp, that it not become difficult to obtain them ["get them"].
3. Nor think²⁸⁶ that I would have been general, if all the others had not been wounded.²⁸⁷
4. O men, soldiers, take up your weapons [Lit. "having taken your weapons"] [and] place yourselves in a circle around my tent.
5. Do not find fault with the peltasts [saying] that they did not remain in formation and await the enemy.
6. Let us put all our common belongings²⁸⁸ into boats and sail off.
7. Even you swear the same oath.
8. Arm yourself, then, as quickly as possible and go to the front.

²⁸⁵ LS, entry for *δίκη*, IV.3, p. 203 "*δίκη* οἱ *δίκας* *διδόναι* to make amends, suffer punishment".

²⁸⁶ *οἶον* is 2nd pers. sing; pres. imper. mid. of *οἴομαι*

²⁸⁷ *ἐτρώθησαν* is 3rd pers. pl.; 1st aor. pass. ind. of *τιτρώσκω* (Lesson LXXIV). The sentence is a past contrary to fact condition.

²⁸⁸ LS, entry for *κοινός*, III, p. 440, gives "*the public treasury*" as a possible meaning for *τὰ κοινά*.

However, C&S seem to want to use *τὰ κοινά* to mean "common belongings" in §497 b, sentence 5 below.

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

b) Write in Greek:

1. μήδ' οἴου²⁸⁹ αὐτὸν ἐκόντα ἰέναι.
2. μέχρι τούτου²⁹⁰ πορευόμεθα ἐν κύκλῳ ἕως²⁹¹ ἴδωμεν ἂν αὐτοὺς σημαίνοντας.
3. μὴ παραβαίνει τὸν νόμον.
4. αὐτοῖς δότε ὑποζύγια ὅσων δέωνται²⁹².
5. τὰ κοινία θέντων εἰς τὴν ναῦν.

Section 498 The Lord's Prayer

Therefore, pray in this way:

Our Father, who [is] in the heavens,
 Let your name be holy,
 Let your kingdom come,
 Let your will happen,
 Both in heaven and upon earth.
 Give to us today bread sufficient for it.
 And remit for us our debts²⁹³
 As even we remit our debtors.
 And do not bring us to trial²⁹⁴,
 But save us from evil²⁹⁵.

-- Adapted from Matthew 6:9-12.

²⁸⁹ Smyth, §2580: "Verbs of *thinking* almost always take the infinitive". However, this same section also mentions that οἶμαι ὅτι, though rare, does occur.

²⁹⁰ Smyth, §2428: "Conjunctions meaning *until* may have, as an implied or expressed antecedent, μέχρι τούτου *up to the time*. Thus, μέχρι τούτου Λᾶσθένης φίλος ἀνομάζετο, ἕως προῦδωκεν Ὀλυνθον *Lasthenes was called a friend (up to the time when) until he betrayed Olynthus*".

²⁹¹ ἕως is used, rather than πρίν, because the main clause does not contain a negative (see Smyth §2425-2429; §2430-2457). For the use of the subjunctive with ἂν in the clause introduced by ἕως, see Smyth §2426a "Subjunctive with ἂν, when the action lies in the Future, and the main clause contains a verb referring to the future...The tense is usually the aorist: the present marks overlapping."

²⁹² ὅσων, neut. gen. pl., see LS, entry for δέω (B), II.1, p. 181. For use of subjunctive in the relative clause, see §482 a), sentence 1. For reason that δέω/δέομαι does not contract (as does, e.g., φιλέω), see LS, entry for δέω (B), p. 181: "(The Aeol. form δεύω ... shows that the Root of this word was ΔΕF.)"

²⁹³ LS, entry for ἀφίημι, II.7, p. 138: "in legal sense, c. dat. pers. et acc. rei, ἀφ. τινὶ αἰτίην *to remit him a charge of a fine Hdt., Dem.*"

²⁹⁴ LS, entry for πειρασμός, p. 616: "*trial, temptation, N. T.*". BDAG, entry for πειρασμός, p. 793: "An attempt to learn the nature or character of someth., *test, trial.*"

²⁹⁵ LS, entry for πονηρός, gives definitions of "*toilsome, painful, grievous*". By the time the New Testament was written, the word had come to mean "*wicked, evil, bad, base*" (BDAG, entry for πονηρός, p. 851).

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa

All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

Section 499 Father And Son

He then kissed his dear son and tossed him in his arms.

He spoke in prayer to Zeus and to the other gods:

"Zeus and you other gods, grant then that this, my son, become,

As I am, eminent among the Trojans, and as noble in strength, and rule Ilios mightily,

And sometime[ποτέ]²⁹⁶ someone might say, when he comes back from war²⁹⁷, 'he is much better than his father'. And may he, once he has killed²⁹⁸ the foe-man, bring [back] the bloody spoils [and] make his mother's heart glad²⁹⁹.

-- Adapted from Homer, *Iliad*, 6.474-481.

²⁹⁶ ποτέ (enclitic adv.) means "sometime". πότε (adverb) means "when".

²⁹⁷ ἐκ πολέμου ἀνιόντα.

²⁹⁸ κτείνᾱς is masc. nom. sing.; 1st aor. part. act. of κτείνω = ἀποκτείνω.

²⁹⁹ As CS points out, χαρείη δὲ φρένα μήτηρ means "may the mother be glad in respect to [the] heart."

Lesson LXXIX Summary Of Indicative Forms And Uses

Section 504 Exercises

a) Translate:

1. Then, collected together, we sat down, marveling that they had not yet filled the boat with food.
2. Established in his kingdom he made a treaty with his opponents.
3. Since, therefore, he used to advise me, I disregarded the seer.
4. If they had not filled all the road with hoplites, we would not have made a treaty³⁰⁰.
5. If only³⁰¹ the Greeks had not believed the Barbarian, who robbed them of their money.
6. His mother, who in fact set him free from the dangers, was helping [him] in these matters.
7. But he had wasted the money, so that he was not able to purchase the beasts of burden.
8. Therefore we will take care that we shall die³⁰² as nobly as possible.

b) Write in Greek:

1. τὶς σκεπτεται ὅπως³⁰³ οἱ πολῖται τινὰ ἀγαθὸν ἄρχοντα αἰρήσονται;
2. εἰ μὴ ἐσήμηνε ἄρξαι, ἔτι ἂν ἐκαθήμην.
3. ὁ Κῦρος [αὐτοῦς] ἐμίσθωσε ὥστε οἱ Ἕλληνες πάλιν ἠθέλησαν αὐτῷ ἔπεσθαι.
4. οὐκ ἐπαύσατο ἀδικεῖν πρὶν αὐτὸς ἔπαθε πολλὰ κακά.
5. εἰ γὰρ οἱ ἐν τῇ κόμῃ σίτου τὸ πλοῖον ἔπλησαν.

³⁰⁰ Past contrary-to-fact condition. §547(b).

³⁰¹ §411(a): εἴθε or εἰ γάρ plus either the imperfect or aorist indicative indicates an unattainable wish in either the present (imperf.) or past (aor.). The negative is μὴ. The logic for the indicative is that the wish is unattainable due to the fact of some preventing cause.

³⁰² See §308.

³⁰³ Ibid.

Section 505 Learning Is But Recollection

"And indeed, Socrates," said Cebes, "if the saying you spoke is true, that our learning happens to be nothing other than recollection, it is necessary, somewhere, in some former time, that we learned that which now we recall. But this is impossible, if our soul were not somewhere before it came into this human body. So that, thus, the soul appears to be something immortal."

"But, Cebes," said Simmias, "what sorts of proofs [were there] for these [ideas]? Remind me, for I do not remember entirely, right now."

"[I will give it to you] in one proof, [and] a very clever one," said Cebes, "since men, when they are asked, if one asks well, they themselves answer on the spot³⁰⁴ about everything. If, indeed, knowledge and right reason did not happen to be in them, they would not such as do this."

-- Adapted from Plato, *Phaedo*, 72E-73A.

Section 506 What Is Truth?

The inquiry about truth is, on the one hand [$\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$] difficult, on the other hand, easy. The evidence is that no one is able to grasp it completely, nor miss it totally, but each [is able] to speak something about nature, [and] from all that is collected there becomes something notable.

-- Adapted from Aristotle, *Metaphysics*, 993.a.30.

³⁰⁴ *LSJ*, entry for ὄρασις.

Appendix: Principal Parts of Verbs Presented in Crosby and Schaeffer

This table presents the principal parts of all Greek verbs used in Crosby & Schaeffer: both the verbs given in lesson vocabularies and the verbs mentioned only in the readings. For each verb that first appears in a lesson vocabulary, the entry includes that lesson number.

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
1	ἀγγέλλω	ἀγγεῶ	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα	ἤγγεμαι	ἤγγέλθην	XXXV
2	ἀγιάζω/ἀνίζω	ἀγιάσω	—	—	—	—	LXXVIII
3	ἄγω	ἄξω	ἤγαγον	ἤγα	ἤγμαι	ἤχθην	III
4	ἀδικέω	ἀδικήσω	ἠδίκησα	—	—	ἠδικήθην	XXIII
5	ἄθροίζω	ἄθροίσω	ἤθροισα	—	ἤθροισμαι	ἠθροίσθην	VIII
6	αἰρέω	αἰρήσω	εἶλον	ἤρηκα	ἤρημαι	ἠρέθην	XXV
7	αἰσθάνομαι	αἰσθήσομαι	ἤσθόμην	ἤσθημαι	—	—	XXXV
8	αἰτέω	αἰτήσω	ἤτησα	ἤτηκα	ἤτημαι	—	XXIII
9	αἰτιάομαι	αἰτιάσομαι	ἠτιάσάμην	—	ἠτιάμαι	ἠτιάθην	LXIX
10	ἀκούω	ἀκούσομαι	ἤκουσα	ἀκήκοα	—	ἠκούσθην	XXXV
11	ἀλίσκομαι	ἀλώσομαι	ἐάλων	ἐάλωκα	—	—	XXV
12	ἀλλάττω	ἀλλάξω	ἤλλαξα	ἤλλαχα	ἤλλαγμαί	ἠλλάχθην/ ἠλλάγθην	XLIX
13	ἄξιόω	ἄξιώσω	ἤξιωσα	ἤξιωκα	ἤξιώμαι	ἠξιώθην	LXXIII
14	ἁμαρτάνω	ἁμαρτήσομαι	ἤμαρτον	ἠμάρτηκα	ἠμάρ- τημαι	ἠμαρτή- θην	LXXIV
15	ἁμελέω	ἁμελήσω	ἠμέλησα	ἠμέληκα	ἠμέλημαι	—	LIV
16	ἀναγκάζω	ἀναγκάσω	ἠνάγκασα	ἠνάγκακα	ἠνάγ- κασμαι	ἠναγκά- σθην	XXX
17	ἀνάσσω	ἀνάξω	ἄναξα	—	—	—	LXXVIII
18	ἄξιόω	ἄξιώσω	ἤξιωσα	ἤξιωκα	ἤξιώμαι	ἠξιώθην	LXXIII
19	ἄπειμί	ἄπέσομαι	—	—	—	—	XVII
20	ἄπέχω	ἄποσχήσω/ἄφέξω	ἔσχον	—	—	—	XI
21	ἀποδεικνύμι	ἀποδείξω	ἀπέδειξα	ἀπο- δέδειχα	ἀπο- δέδειγμαί	ἀπεδείχ- θην	LXXI
22	ἀποδιδράσκω	ἀποδράσομαι	—	ἀπο- δέδρακα	—	—	
23	ἀποδίδωμι	ἀποδώσω	ἀπέδωκα	ἀπο- δέδωκα	ἀπο- δέδομαι	ἀπεδόθην	LXIV
24	ἀποθνήσκω	ἀποθανοῦμαι	ἀπέθανον	τέθνηκα	—	—	XXXIV
25	ἀποκρίνομαι	ἀποκρινοῦμαι	—	—	ἀπο- κέκρῖμαι	ἀπεκρίθην	L

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
26	ἀποκτείνω	ἀποκτενῶ	ἀπέκ- τεινα	ἀπέκ- τονα	—	—	
27	ἀπόλλυμι	ἀπολῶ	ἀπόλεσα/ ἀπο- λώμην ³⁰⁵	ἀπο- λώλεκα/ ἀπόλωλα	—	—	LXXI
28	ἀπορέω	ἀπορήσω	ἠπόρησα	ἠπόρηκα	ἠπόρημαι	ἠπορήθην	XLI
28	ἀποστερέω	ἀποστερήσω	ἀπ- εστέρησα	ἀπ- εστέρηκα	ἀπ- εστέρημαι	ἀπ- εστερήθην	LXXVI
30	ἀποτέμνω	ἀποτεμῶ	ἀπέτεμον	—	—	ἀπετέμη- θην	LI
31	ἄπτω	ἄψω	ἤψα	—	ἤμμαι	ἤφθην	LXVII
32	ἄρπάζω	ἄρπάσω	ἤρπασα/ ἤρπαξα	ἤρπακα	ἤρπασμαι/ ἤρπαγμαί	ἤρπάσθην/ ἤρπάχθην	VIII
33	ἄρχω	ἄρξω	ἤρξα	ἤρξα	ἤργμαι	ἤρχθην	IX
34	ἀτιμάζω	ἀτιμάσω	—	ἠτίμακα	ἠτίμασμαι	ἠτιμάσθην	LIII
35	ἀφίημι	ἀφήσω	ἀφήκα/ ἀφήν	ἀφείκα	ἀφείμαι	ἀφείθην	LXXVI
36	ἀφικνέομαι	ἀφίξομαι	ἀφικόμην	—	ἀφίγμαι	—	XXV
37	ἄχθομαι	ἄχθέσομαι	—	—	—	ἠχθέσθην	XXIV
38	βαίνω ³⁰⁶	βήσομαι	ἔβην	βέβηκα	βέβαμαι	έβάθην	XLVII
39	βάλλω	βαλῶ	έβαλον	βέβληκα	βεβλήμαι	έβλήθην	XLVII
40	βασιλεύω	βασιλεύσω	έβασί- λευσα	—	—	—	XLIV
41	βλάπτω	βλάψω	έβλαιψα	βέβλαφα	βέ- βλαμμαι	έβλάφθην	LXXVII
42	βλέπω	βλέψω	έβλειψα	—	—	—	LXXII
43	βοηθέω	βοηθήσω	έβοήθησα	—	—	—	XLIV
44	βουλεύω	βουλεύσω	έβούλευ- σα	βεβού- λευκα	βεβούλευ- μαι	έβουλεύ- θην	XIII
45	βούλομαι	βουλήσομαι	—	—	βεβούλη- μαι	έβουλήθην	XXIV
46	γίγνομαι	γενήσομαι	έγενόμην	γέγονα	γεγένημαι	—	XXVI
47	γινώσκω	γνώσομαι	έγνων	έγνωκα	έγνωσμαι	έγνώσθην	XXXV
48	γράφω	γράψω	έγραψα	γέγραφα	γέ- γραμμαι	έγράφην	III
49	δαπανάω	δαπανήσω	έδαπά- νησα	δεδαπά- νηκα	δεδαπά- νημαι	έδαπα- νήθην	LXVIII
50	δέδοικα ³⁰⁷	—	έδειςα	—	—	—	LII

³⁰⁵ ἀπόλλυμι in the active means "to destroy utterly", "to kill". In the middle and passive, it means "to perish utterly", "to die". ἀπόλεσα and ἀπολώλεκα (1st aor. and 1st perf. act.) have the former sense. ἀπολώμην and ἀπόλωλα (2nd aor. mid. and 2nd perf. active) have the latter sense. See *LS*, entry for ἀπόλλυμι, p.101.

³⁰⁶ While βαίνω is presented in §347, for some reason Crosby & Schaeffer did not include the perfect middle and aorist passive in their table.

³⁰⁷ Perfect used as present in Attic.

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
51	δεῖ	δεήσει	ἔδειξει	—	—	—	XXXI
52	δείκνυμι	δείξω	ἔδειξα	δέδειχα	δέδειγμαι	ἔδειχθην	LXXI
53	δέομαι	δεήσομαι	—	—	δεδέημαι	ἔδεήθην	LIV
54	δέχομαι	δέξομαι	ἔδεξάμην	—	δέδεγμαι	ἔδέχθην	XXVI
55	δηλώω	δηλώσω	ἔδηλωσα	δεδήλωκα	δε- δήλωμαι	ἔδηλώθην	LXXIII
56	διαγιγνώσκω	διαγνώσομαι	διέγνων	—	—	—	LXXII
57	διαρπάζω	διαρπάσω	διήρπασα	—	—	—	XVIII
58	διατρίβω	διατρίψω	διέτριψα	δια- τέτριφα	δια- τέτριμμαι	διετρίβην	LIV
59	διδάσκω	διδάξω	ἔδίδαξα	δεδίδαχα	δεδί- δαγμαι	ἔδιδάχθην	XXXI
60	δίδωμι	δώσω	ἔδωκα	δέδωκα	δέδομαι	ἔδόθην	LXIV
61	διώκω	διώξω	ἔδίωξα	—	δεδίωγμαι	ἔδιώχθην	IX
62	δουλεύω	δουλεύσω	ἔδούλευ- σα	—	—	—	LXX
63	δοκέω	δόξω	ἔδοξα	—	δέδογμαι	εδόχθην ³⁰⁸	XXIII
64	δύναμαι	δυνήσομαι	δε- δύνημαι	—	—	ἔδυνήθην	LIX
65	εἶω	εἶσω	εἶασα	εἶακα	εἶαμαι	εἶάθην	LXIX
66	ἐθέλω (οἱ θέλω)	ἐθελήσω	ἠθέλησα	ἠθέληκα	—	—	III
67	εἶμι	ἔσομαι	—	—	—	—	XVII
68	εἶμι	—	—	—	—	—	LXIX
69	—	—	εἶπε, εἶπον	—	—	—	XXXV
70	ἐλαύνω	ἐλῶ	ἤλασα	-ελήλακα	ἐλήλαμαι	ἤλάθην	
71	ἐλπίζω	ἐλπίσω/ἐλπῶ	ἤλπισα	ἤλπικα	—	ἤλπισθην	XLVII
72	ἐνθυμέομαι	ἐνθυμήσομαι	—	—	ἐν- τεθύμημαι	ἐν- εθυμήθην	LXXVII
73	ἐννοέω	ἐννοήσω	ἐννόησα	—	—	—	LXI
74	ἐξαπατάω	ἐξαπατήσω	ἐξ- ηπάτησα	ἐξ- ηπάτηκα	ἐξ- ηπάτημαι	ἐξ- ηπατήθην	LXXIII
75	ἐξελαύνω	ἐξελάσω/ἐξελεῶ	ἐξήλασα	ἐξ- ελήλακα	—	—	XVI
76	ἔξεστι	—	—	—	—	—	XVII
77	ἐπαινέω	ἐπαιnéσω	ἐπῆνεσα	ἐπῆνεκα	ἐπῆνημαι	ἐπηνέθην	XLIII

³⁰⁸ Aor. pass. found only in compounds.

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
78	ἐπιβουλεύω	ἐπιβουλεύσω	ἐπέβου- λευσα	ἐπιβεβού- λευκα	ἐπιβε- βού- λευμαι	ἐπέβου- λεύθην	XIII
79	ἐπιδείκνυμι	ἐπιδείξω	ἐπέδειξα	ἐπιδέδειχα	ἐπιδέ- δειγμαι	ἐπεδείχ- θην	LXXII
80	ἐπιθύμew	ἐπιθύμησω	ἐπεθύμησα	—	—	—	XXXIII
81	ἐπιμελέομαι	ἐπι-μελήσομαι	—	—	ἐπιμε- μέλημαι	ἐπεμελή- θην	XXV
82	ἐπίσταμαι	ἐπιστήσομαι	—	—	—	ἠπιστή- θην	LIX
83	ἔπομαι	ἔψομαι	ἐσπόμην	—	—	—	XXVI
84	ἔρχομαι	—	ἦλθον	ἐλήλυθα	—	—	XXIV
85	ἐρωτάω	ἐρωτήσω	ἠρώτησα	ἠρώηκα	ἠρώ- τημαι	ἠρωτήθην	LXVII
86	εὐρίσκω	εὐρήσω	ἤρρον	ἤρηκα	ἤρημαι	ἠρέθην	XXXV
87	εὐχομαι	εὐξομαι	ἠξάμην	—	εὐγμαι	—	XXXVII
88	ἔχω	σχῆσω/ἔξω	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα	έσχημαι	—	X
89	ζάω	ζήσω	—	—	—	—	LXXII
90	ζεύγνυμι	ζεύξω	ἔζευξα	—	ἔζευγα ι	ἔζεύχθην	LXXI
91	ἠγέομαι	ἠγήσομαι	ἠγησάμην	—	ἠγμαι	—	XXV
92	ἠδομαι	ἠστήσομαι	—	—	—	—	XXIV
93	ἠκω	ἠξω	—	—	—	—	XII
94	ἠττάομαι	ἠττήσομαι	ἠττημαι	—	—	ἠττήθην	LXXIII
95	θάπτω	θάψω	ἔθαψα	—	τέθαμμα ι	ἐτάφην	LIII
96	θαρρέω	θαρρήσω	ἐθάρρησα	—	—	—	XLVIII
97	θαυμάζω	θαυμάσομαι	ἐθαύμασα	τεθαύμακα	—	ἐθαυ- μάσθην	XXXV
98	θέω	θεύσομαι	Other	forms	from	τρέχω	XLIV
99	θύω	θύσω	ἔθυσα	τέθυκα	τέθυμαι	ἐτύθην	XXXVII
100	ιδρύω	ιδρύσω	ἰδρῶσα ³⁰⁹	ἰδρῶκα	ἰδρῶμαι	ιδρύθην	LXXVI
101	ἵημι	ἦσω	ἦκα	εἶκα	εἶμαι	εἶθην	LXII
102	ἵστημι	στήσω	ἔστησα/ ἔστην	ἔστηκα	ἔσταμαι	ἐστάθην	LIX
103	κάθημαι (present)	ἐκαθήμην or καθήμην (imperfect)	(Found in present and imperf. only)	—	—	—	LXXIX
104	καλέω	καλῶ	ἐκάλεσα	κέκληκα	κέ- κλημαι	ἐκλήθην	XXIII
105	κάω (καίω)	καύσω	ἔκαυσα	κέκαυκα	κέ- καυμαι	ἐκαύθην	LXXVI

³⁰⁹ Note that the initial ι is not given an augment, and that the υ is lengthened in the aorist. ιδρύω is related to ἵζω "make to sit, seat, place". LS, entries for ιδρύω and ἵζω, p. 376f.

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
106	κείμαι	κείσομαι	—	—	—	—	LXIII
107	κελεύω	κελεύσω	ἔκελευσα	κεκέλευκα	κεκέ- λευσμαι	ἔκελεύσ- θην	XIII
108	κλέπτω	κλέψω	ἔκλεψα	κέκλοφα	κέ- κλεμμαι	ἔκλαπην	XXXV
109	κρατέω	κρατήσω	ἐκράτησα	—	—	—	XLIII
110	κρίνω	κρινῶ	ἔκρινα	κέκρικα	κέκριμαι	ἐκρίθην	L
111	κτάομαι	κτήσομαι	ἐκτήσάμην	—	—	ἐκτήθην	LXXIII
112	κωλύω	κωλύσω	ἐκώλυσα	κεκώλυκα	κεκώλυμαι	ἐκωλύ-θην	XXI
113	λαμβάνω	λήψομαι	ἔλαβον	εἴληφα	εἴλημμαι	ἐλήφθην	XXI
114	λανθάνω	λήσω	ἔλαθον	λέληθα	λέλησμαι	—	LXXIV
115	λέγω	λέξω	ἔλεξα	—	λέλεγμαι	ἐλέχθην	XXXV
116	λείπω	λείψω	ἔλιπον	λέλοιπα	λέλειμμαι	ἐλείφθην	X
117	λύω	λύσω	ἔλυσα	λέλυκα	λέλυμαι	ἐλύθην	III
118	μανθάνω	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	μεμάθηκα	—	—	L
119	μάχομαι	μαχοῦμαι	ἔμαχεσάμην	—	μεμάχημαι	—	XXIV
120	μέλει	μελήσει	ἐμέλησε	μεμέληκε	—	—	L
121	μέλλω	μελλήσω	ἐμέλλησα	—	—	—	IX
122	μένω	μενῶ	ἔμεινα	μεμένηκα	—	—	XVI
123	μετα- πέμπομαι	μεταπέμφομαι	μετε- πεμφάμην	—	μεταπέ- πεμμαι	μετεπέμ- φθην	XXIV
124	μηχανάομαι	μηχανήσομαι	ἐμηχανησά- μην	—	—	—	LXVII
125	μυμνήσκω	μνήσω	ἔμνησα	—	μέμνημαι	ἐμνήσθην	LIII
126	μισθῶ	—	ἐμίσθωσα	—	—	—	LXXIX
127	νέμω	νεμῶ	ἔνεμινα	νενέμηκα	νενέμημαι	ἐνεμήθην	LXIII
128	νικάω	νικήσω	ἐνίκησα	νενίκηκα	νενίκημαι	ἐνίκηθην	LXVIII
129	νομίζω	νομιῶ	ἐνόμισα	νενόμικα	νε- νόμισμαι	ἐνομίσθην	IX
130	οἶδα	εἴσομαι	—	—	—	—	LXVIII
131	οἰκέω	οἰκήσω	ἔκησα	ἔκηκα	ἔκημαι	ἔκήθην	LIII
132	οἶομαι	οἶήσομαι	ἔήθην	—	—	—	LXXVIII
133	ὄμνυμι	ὀμοῦμαι	ἔμοσα	ὀμώμοκα	ὀμώμοσμαι	ὀμόσθην	LXXI
134	ὁμολογέω	ὀμολογήσω	ὀμολόγησα	ὀμολόγηκα	ὀμο- λόγημαι	ὀμο- λογήθην	XXVI
135	ὀπλίζω	ὀπλίσω	ἔπλισα	—	ἔπλισμαι	ὀπλίσθην	LIV
136	ὀράω	ὀφομαι	εἶδον	ἔώρακα/ ἔώρακα	ἔώραμαι/ ἔωμαι	ἔφθην	LXVII
137	ὀρμάω	ὀρμήσω	ἔρμησα	ἔρμηκα	ἔρμημαι	ὀρμήθην	LXXIII
138	ὀφείλω	ὀφειλήσω	ἔφείλησα/ ἔφελον	ἔφείληκα	—	ἔφειλήθην	L
139	παίω	παίσω	ἔπαισα	πέπαικα	—	—	LXI
140	παραβαίνω	παραβήσομαι	παρέβην	παρα- βέβηκα	παρα- βέβασμαι	παρεβάθην	LXXVIII

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
141	παρασκευάζω	παρασκευάσω	παρασκευάσα	—	παρασκευάσμαι	—	XXVI
142	παρειμί	παρέσομαι	—	—	—	—	XVII
143	παρέχω	παρασχήσω/ παρέξω	παρέσχον	παρέσχηκα	παρέσχημαι	—	XXI
144	πάσχω	πείσομαι	ἔπαθον	πέπονθα	—	—	XXX
145	παύω	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	πέπαυκα	πέπαυμαι	ἐπαύθην	I
146	πείθω	πείσω	ἔπειθα	πέπεικα/ πέποιθα	πέπεισμαι	ἐπέισθην	IX
147	πειράομαι	πειράσομαι	ἐπειρά- σάμην	—	πε- πειράμαι	ἐπειράθην	LXIX
148	πέμπω	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	πέπομψα	πέπεμμαι	ἐπέμφθην	I
149	πίνω	πίομαι	ἔπιον	πέπωκα	-πέπομαι	-επόθην	LXX
150	πίπλημι	πλήσω	ἔπλησα	πέπληκα	πέπλημαι/ πέπλησμαι	ἐπλήσθην	LXXIX
152	πίπτω	πεσοῦμαι	ἔπεσον	πέπτωκα	—	—	XLIV
152	πιστεύω	πιστεύσω	ἐπίστευσα	πε- πίστευκα	—	ἐπιστεύ- θην	XXI
153	πλέω	πλεύσομαι	ἔπλευσα	πέπλευκα	πέ- πλευσμαι	—	LXV
154	πλήττω	πλήξω	ἔπληξα	πέπληγα	πέπληγ- μαι	ἐπλήχθην/ ἐπλήγγην	XLIV
155	πολεμέω	πολεμήσω	ἐπολέμησα	πεπολέμη- κα	πεπολέμη- μαι	ἐπολεμη- θην	XXIII
156	πολιορκέω	πολιορκήσω	ἐπο-λιόρκσα	πεπο- λιόρκηκα	πεπο- λιόρκημαι	ἐπολιορ- κηθην	LXXVI
157	ποιέω	ποιήσω	ἐποίησα	πεποίηκα	πεποίημαι	ἐποίηθην	XXIII
158	πονέω	πονήσω	ἐπόνησα	πεπόνηκα	πεπόνημαι	ἐπονήθην	LXXII
159	πορεύω/ πορεύομαι	πορεύσω	ἐπόρευσα	πεπόρευκα	πεπόρευ- μαι	ἐπορεύθην	XXIV
160	πορίζω	ποριῶ	ἐπόρισα	πεπόρικα	πε- πόρισμαι	ἐπορισθην	XXXIII
161	πράττω	πράξω	ἔπρᾶξα	πέπρᾶχα	πέπραγμαί	ἐπράχθην	XXXII
162	πυθάνομαι	πεύσομαι	ἐπυθόμην	—	πέπυσμαι	—	XXXV
163	πωλέω	πωλήσω	ἐπώλεσα	—	—	—	
164	ρέω	ρύσομαι	—	ἔρρῆκα	—	ἔρρῆν	LXVII
165	ρίπτω	ρίψω	ἔρριψα	ἔρριφα	ἔρριμμαι	ἔρριφθην/ ἔρριφην	XLIII
166	ρύομαι	ρύσομαι	ἔρρῶσάμην	—	—	—	LXXVII
167	σημαίνω	σημανῶ	ἐσήμεινα	—	σε- σήμασμαι	ἐσημάνθην	LXXVII
168	σκέπτομαι	σκέψομαι	ἐσκεψάμην	—	ἔσκεμμαι	—	L
169	σκοπέω	σκέψομαι	ἐσκεψάμην	—	ἔσκεμμαι	—	L
170	σπένδομαι	—	ἔσπεισάμην	—	ἔσπεισμαι	—	LXXIX
171	σπεύδω	σπεύσω	ἔσπευσα	—	—	—	XII
172	στέλλω	στελῶ	ἔστειλα	ἔσταλκα	ἔσταλμαι	ἔστάλην	LX

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
173	στρατεύω	στρατεύσω/ στρατεύσομαι	ἔστράτευσα/ ἔστρατευ- σάμην	—	ἔστράτευ- μαι	ἔστρατεύ- θην	XXXIII
174	στρέφω	στρέψω	ἔστρεψα	—	ἔστραμμαι	ἔστράφην	XLIX
175	συμβουλεύω	συμβουλεύσω	συνέβου- λευσα	συμβεβού- λευκα	συμβεβου- λευμαι	συνέβου- λεύθην	XIV
176	σώζω	σώσω	ἔσωσα	—	σέσωσμαι	ἔσώθην	XXXIV
177	τάπτω	τάξω	ἔταξα	τέταχα	τέταγμαί	ἐτάχθην	XXXIII
178	τείνω	τενῶ	ἔτεινα	τέτακα	τέταμαι	ἐτάθην	XLVIII
179	τελευτάω	τελευτήσω	ἔτελεύτησα	τετελεύ- τηκα	τετελεύ- τημαι	ἔτελευ- τήθην	LXVII
180	τέμνω	τεμοῦμαι	ἔτεμον/ ἔταμον	τέτμηκα	τέτμημαι	ἐτμήθην	L
181	τίθημι	θήσω	ἔθηκα	τέθηκα	τέθειμαι	ἐτέθην	LXII
182	τιμάω	τιμήσω	ἐτίμησα	τετίμηκα	τετίμημαι	ἐτίμήθην	LXVII
183	τιμωρέω	τιμωρήσω	ἐτιμώρησα	τετι- μώρηκα	τετι- μώρημαι	ἐτι- μωρήθην	LXXVI
184	τιτρώσκω	τρώσω	ἔτρωσα	—	τέτρωμαι	ἐτρώθην	LXXIV
185	τρέπω	τρέψω	ἔτρεψα	τέτροφα	τέτραμμαι	ἐτράπην	XXI
186	τρέφω	θρέψω	ἔθρεψα	τέτροφα	τέθραμμαι	ἐτράφην	XXXIII
187	τρέχω	δραμοῦμαι	ἔδραμον	-δεδράμη- κα	-δεδράμη- μαι	—	L
188	τυγχάνω	τεύξομαι	ἔτυχον	τετύχα	—	—	LXIII
189	ὑπισχνέομαι	ὑποσχόσομαι	ὑπεσχόμην	—	ὑπέσχημαι	—	XXVI
190	ὑποπτεύω	ὑποπτεύσω	—	—	—	—	IX
191	φαίνω	φανῶ	ἔφηνα	πέφηνα	πέφασμαι	ἐφάνην	L
192	φέρω	οἴσω	ἤνεγκα	ἐνήνοχα	ἐνήνεγμαί	ἤνέχθην	XXX
193	φεύγω	φεύξομαι	ἔφυγον	πέφευγα	—	—	VI
194	φημί	φήσω	ἔφησα	—	—	—	LXI
195	φθάνω	φθήσομαι	ἔφθισα	—	—	—	LXXIV
196	φιλέω	φιλήσω	ἐφίλησα	πεφίληκα	πεφίλημαι	ἐφιλήθην	XXIII
197	φοβέομαι	φοβήσομαι	ἐφοβησάμην	—	πεφό- βημαι	ἐφοβήθην	L
198	φυλάττω	φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα	πεφύλακα	πεφύ- λαγμαί	ἐφυλάχθην	VI
199	χαλεπαίνω	χαλεπανῶ	ἐχαλέπηνα	—	—	—	L
200	χράομαι	χρήσομαι	ἐχρησάμην	—	κέχρημαι	ἐχρήσθην	LXIX

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)

	Pres. Act.	Future Act.	Aor. Act.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Mid.	Aor. Pass.	Lesson
201	χρή	χρήν	χρή	χρείη	χρήναι	—	XLVIII
202	ψεύδω	ψεύσω	ἔψευσα	—	ἔψευσμαι	ἐψεύσθην	LXI
203	ἠνέομαι	ἠνήσομαι	ἔπριάμην	—	—	—	LXXV
204	ἠφέλλω	ἠφέλλω	ἠφέλλησα	ἠφέλληκα	ἠφέλλημαι	ἠφέληθην	XXXI

©2006, Department of Classics, The University of Iowa
All Rights Reserved

This Study Guide is intended to supplement and accompany An Introduction To Greek by Henry Lamar Crosby and John Nevin Schaeffer (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1928)